



W. B. Hole, R.S.A.]

ALAN BRECK AND DAVID BALFOUR ON RANNOCH MOOR.

[See page 76

LITERATURE OF THE NINETEENTH CENTURY

SELECTIONS FROM MODERN AUTHORS, NEWSPAPERS
AND MAGAZINES.

PROFUSELY ILLUSTRATED



M^cDOUGALL'S EDUCATIONAL COMPANY, LIMITED.

LONDON: 8 FARRINGDON AVENUE, E.C. 4

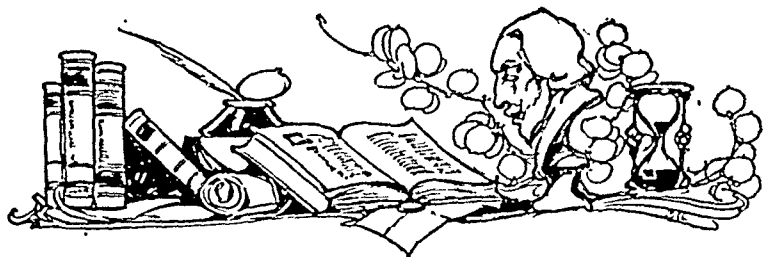
EDINBURGH: EAST CLAREMONT STREET.

CONTENTS.

(The titles of poetical pieces are printed in *italics*.)

LESSON	PAGE
1. How the Gold was Found, I., . . . CHARLES READE.	7
2. " " II., . . . "	11
3. A Scot's First Impressions of England, R. L. STEVENSON.	16
4. <i>A Greyport Legend</i> , BRET HARTE.	21
5. The Bread Riot, MRS. CRAIK.	25
6. The Plague at Eyam, I., From Wood's <i>History of Eyam</i> .	31
7. " " II., . . . "	36
8. <i>The Battle of Flodden</i> , I., . . . Sir WALTER SCOTT.	40
9. " " II., . . . " "	45
10. The Earl of Beacons- } field, }	The Rt. Hon. W. E. GLADSTONE. 49
11. Mr. Gladstone, The Rt. Hon. A. J. BALFOUR.	53
12. The Turcoman Robbers and their Prisoners, J. J. MORIER.	58
13. <i>King Olaf's Failure</i> —	
I. <i>The Challenge of Thor</i> , . . . H. W. LONGFELLOW.	64
14. II. <i>The Nun of Nidaros</i> , . . . " "	69
15. The Escape on the Moor, I., . . . R. L. STEVENSON.	73
16. " " II., . . . " "	77
17. Making Peace with the } Hill Tribes, }	Adapted from <i>The Scotsman</i> . 82
18. <i>The Death of De Boune</i> , Sir WALTER SCOTT.	88
19. The Duke of Burgundy's Feast } at Rotterdam, }	CHARLES READE. 92
20. A Total Eclipse of the Sun, I., . . . Sir ROBERT BALL.	99
21. " " II., . . . " "	104
22. <i>The Belfry of Bruges</i> , H. W. LONGFELLOW.	109
23. Mr. Winkle goes Rook Shooting, . . . CHARLES DICKENS.	114
24. In a Coal Mine, I., Adapted from <i>The Windsor Magazine</i> .	120
25. " " II., . . . " "	125
26. The Discovery of Roast Pig, I., . . . CHARLES LAMB.	130
27. " " II., . . . " "	134
28. <i>Lessons from the Gorse</i> , MRS. BROWNING.	139
29. The Isle of Sark, . . . From <i>The Manchester City News</i> .	141
30. <i>The Daffodils</i> , WILLIAM WORDSWORTH.	146
31. The Death of Nelson, ROBERT SOUTHEY.	149

LESSON	PAGE
32. <i>Two Poems in Browning—</i> <i>Home Thoughts from Abroad, and</i> } <i>Home Thoughts from the Sea, .</i> } ROBERT BROWNING. 153	
33. The Trial of Alice Lisle, I., . . . LORD MACAULAY. 159	
34. " " II., . . . " " 163	
35. The Battle of Inverlochy, . . . SIR WALTER SCOTT. 168	
36. <i>The Armada, . . .</i> . . . LORD MACAULAY. 174	
37. The Shetland Islands and } the Whale Fisheries, I., } Adapted from <i>The Scotsman</i> . 182	
38. The Shetland Islands and } the Whale Fisheries, II., } " " 188	
39. The Battle of Jena, I., . . . CHARLES LEVER. 195	
40. " " II., . . . " " 199	
41. <i>The Eve of Waterloo, . . .</i> . . . LORD BYRON. 205	
42. A Lakeland Cottage, . . . THOMAS DE QUINCEY. 210	
43. About Balloons, I., . . . Adapted from <i>The Daily News</i> . 219	
44. " " II., . . . " " 225	
45. The False Alarm, I., . . . SIR WALTER SCOTT. 229	
46. " " II., . . . " " 234	
47. <i>The Beleaguered City, . . .</i> . . . H. W. LONGFELLOW. 239	
48. A Strange Visitor, . . . THOMAS DE QUINCEY. 242	
49. The Service of the Empire, I., . . . LORD ROSEBERY. 247	
50. " " II., . . . " " 253	
51. President Lincoln's Second Inaugural Address, . . . 258	
52. <i>The Holly Tree, . . .</i> . . . ROBERT SOUTHBY. 264	
53. Workers, . . . THOMAS CARLYLE. 267	
54. Queen Mary's Escape, I., . . . SIR WALTER SCOTT. 271	
55. " " II., . . . " " 277	
READINGS FROM SHAKESPEARE AND MILTON—	
56. <i>Hotspur's Excuse, . . .</i> . . . From "Henry IV." 283	
57. <i>Queen Elizabeth's Greatness, . . .</i> . . . From "Henry VIII." 285	
58. <i>The Morning Hymn of Adam</i> } <i>and Eve, . . .</i> } From "Paradise Lost." 288	
59. <i>Two Sonnets, . . .</i> . . . MILTON. 292	
NOTES ON NINETEENTH CENTURY AUTHORS, . . . 295	
SHAKESPEARE, . . . 302	
MILTON, . . . 303	



LITERARY READER.

1.—HOW THE GOLD WAS FOUND.

[The following passage from *It is Never too Late to Mend*, tells how Tom Robinson and George Fielding found gold in Australia. They had left the settled parts of the country, and were examining a little valley when four other gold-seekers attacked them. The assailants were driven off, and ordered to keep at a distance; but one of them, a man called Jem, who had been wounded by Jacky, an Australian black with Robinson and Fielding, asked and received permission to join the men he had attacked. Robinson, who knew more than his companions, now proceeded to show them how to find out whether the soil of the valley contained gold.]

PART I.

1. Robinson walked thoughtfully, with his hands behind him, backwards and forwards, like a great admiral on his quarter-deck—enemy to leeward. Every eye was upon him, and watched him in respectful inquiring silence. “Knowledge is power”; this was the man now — the rest children.

2. “What tools have you?”

“There is a spade and trowel in that bush, captain.”

“Fetch them, George. Hadn’t you a pan?”

“No, captain; we used a calabash: he will find it lower down.”

George after a little search found all these objects, and brought them back.

3. "Now," cried Robinson, "these greenhorns have been washing in a stream that runs now, but perhaps in the days of Noah was not a river at all; but you look at the old bed of a stream down out there: that was a much stronger stream than this in its day, and it ran for more than a hundred thousand years before it dried up."

4. "How can you tell that?" said George, resuming some of his incredulity.

"Look at those monstrous stones in it here, there, and everywhere. It has been a powerful stream to carry such masses with it as that, and it has been running many thousand years, for see how deep it has eaten into its rocky sides here and there. That was a river, my lads, and washed gold down for hundreds of thousands of years before ever Adam stood on the earth."

5. The men gave a hurrah, and George and Jacky prepared to run and find the treasure.

"Stop," cried Robinson, "you are not at the gold yet. Can you tell in what parts of the channel it lies thick, and where there isn't enough to pay the labour of washing it? Well, I can. Look at that bend where the round pebbles are collected so; there was a strong eddy there. Well, under the ridge of that eddy is ten times as much gold lying as in the level parts."

6. "Stop a bit again. Do you know how deep or

how shallow it lies? Do you think you can find it by the eye? Do you know what clays it sinks through as if they were a sieve, and what stops it like an iron door? Your quickest way is to take Captain Robinson's time—and that is now."

7. He snatched the spade, and giving full vent to the ardour he had so long suppressed with difficulty, plunged down a little declivity that led to the ancient stream, and drove his spade into its shingle, the débris of centuries of centuries. George sprang after him, his eyes gleaming with hope and agitation; the black followed in wonder and excitement, and the wounded Jem limped last, and, unable through weakness to work, seated himself with glowing eyes upon that ancient river's bank.

8. "Away with all this gravel and shingle—these are all new-comers—the real bed of the stream is below all this, and we must get down to that."

Trowel and spade and tomahawk went furiously to work, and soon cleared away the gravel from a surface of three or four feet; beneath this they found a bed of grey clay.

9. "Let us wash that, captain," said Jem eagerly.

"No, Jem," was the reply, "that is the way novices waste their time. This grey clay is porous, too porous to hold gold—we must go deeper."

Tomahawk, spade, and trowel went furiously to work again.

10. "Give me the spade," said George, and he dug and shovelled out with herculean strength and amazing ardour; his rheumatism was gone and nerves came back from that very hour. "Here is a white clay."

"Let me see it. Pipe-clay! go no deeper, George; if you were to dig a hundred feet, you would not find an ounce of gold below that."

11. George rested on his spade. "What are we to do, then? Try somewhere else?"

"Not till we have tried here first."

"But you say there is nothing below this pipe-clay."

"No more there is."

"Well, then."

"But I don't say there is nothing above it!"

12. "Well, but there is nothing much above it except the grey, without 'tis this small streak of brownish clay, but that is not an inch thick."

13. "George! in that inch lies all the gold we are likely to find; if it is not there, we have only to go elsewhere. Now while I get water, you stick your spade in and cut the brown clay away from the white it lies on. Don't leave a spot of the brown sticking to the white—the lower part of the brown clay is the likeliest."

CHARLES READE.

(From "*It is Never too Late to Mend.*")

cal'a-bash
in-cre-du'i-li-ty
sieve

de-cliv'i-ty
de'bris
tom'a-hawk

nov-i-ces
her-cu'le-an
rheu-ma-tism

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>Par.
1. quarter-deck, the high deck near the stern of a man-of-war.
„ leeward, the direction towards which the wind blows.
2. calabash, dried gourd shell used as a pail or water vessel.</p> | <p>Par.
5. eddy, whirl of water.
7. débris (pronounced as <i>dé-bree</i>), worn down material.
10. herculean strength, strength like that of Hercules, a hero of Greek story.
12. without, provincial usage for <i>unless</i>.</p> |
|--|--|

Derivations, etc.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>Par.
7. ardour, from Lat. <i>ardeo</i>, I glow or burn. Robinson was <i>burning</i> with eagerness. Give a word that means <i>boiling</i> with purpose. (Lat. <i>ferveo</i>, I boil.)</p> | <p>Par.
9. novices, from Latin <i>novus</i>, new; men or women who wish to become monks or nuns and are still on trial. Here it means beginners.</p> |
|--|--|

Oral Exercises.

1. Give Robinson's reasons for looking for gold where he did
2. What mistakes were made by Jem and George?

Composition.

Write a description of the scene of the search for gold as you imagine it to have been.

2.—HOW THE GOLD WAS FOUND.

PART II.

1. A shower having fallen the day before, Robinson found water in a hole not far distant. He filled his calabash and returned; meantime George and Jacky had got together nearly a barrowful of the brown, or rather chocolate-coloured clay, mixed slightly with the upper and lower strata, the grey and white.

2. "I want yon calabash, and George's as well." Robinson filled George's calabash two-thirds full of the stuff, and pouring some water upon it, said good-naturedly to Jem, "There, you may do the first washing if you like."

3. "Thank you, captain," said Jem, who proceeded instantly to stir and dissolve the clay and pour it carefully away as it dissolved. Jacky was sent for more water, and this, when used as



WASHING FOR GOLD.

described, had left the clay reduced to about one-sixth of its original bulk.

4. "Now, captain," cried Jem in great excitement.

"No, it's not captain yet," said Robinson; "is that the way you do pan-washing?"

5. He then took the calabash from Jem, and gave him Jacky's calabash two-thirds full of clay to treat like the other, and this being done, he emptied the dry remains of one calabash into the other, and gave Jem a third lot to treat likewise.

6. This done, you will observe he had in one calabash the results of three first washings; but now he trusted Jem no longer. He took the calabash and said, "You look faint, you are not fit to work; besides, you have not got the right twist of the hand yet, my lad. Pour for me, George."

7. Robinson stirred and began to dissolve the three remainders, and every now and then with an artful turn of the hand he sent a portion of the muddy liquid out of the vessel. At the end of this washing there remained scarce more than a good handful of clay at the bottom. More water was poured on this. "Now," said Robinson, "we shall know this time, and if you see but one spot of yellow amongst it, we are all gentlemen and men of fortune."

8. He dissolved the clay, and twisted and turned the vessel with great dexterity, and presently the whole of the clay was liquefied.

"Now," said Robinson, "all your eyes upon it, and if I spill anything I ought to keep, you tell me."

9. He said this conceitedly, but with evident agitation. He was now pouring away the dirty water with the utmost care, so that anything, however small, that might be heavier than clay should remain behind. Presently he paused and drew a long breath. He feared to decide so great a question: it was but for a moment; he began again to pour the dirty water away very slowly and carefully. Every eye was diving into the vessel. There was a dead silence!

10. Robinson poured with great care. There was now little more than a wineglassful left.

DEAD SILENCE!

Suddenly a tremendous cry broke from all these silent figures at the same instant.

11. "Hurrah! we are the greatest men above ground. If a hundred emperors and kings died to-day, their places could be filled to-morrow; but the world could not do without us and our find. We are gentlemen—we are noblemen—we are whatever we like to be. Hurrah!" cried Robinson.

12. How they dug and scraped, and fought tooth, and spade, and nail, and trowel, and tomahawk for gold! Their shirts were wet through with sweat, yet they felt no fatigue. Their trousers were sheets of clay, yet they suffered no sense of dirt.

13. They dug, they scraped, they bowed their backs, and wrought with fury and inspiration unparalleled; and when the sun began to decline behind the hills, these four human mutes felt

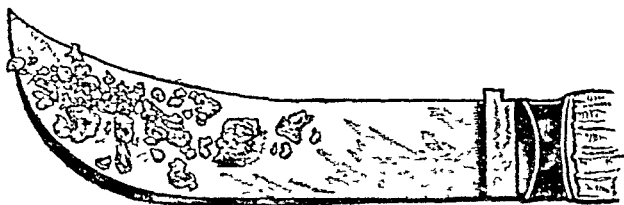
injured. They lifted their eyes a moment from the ground, and cast a fretful look at the great tranquil luminary.

“Are you really going to set this afternoon the same as usual, when we need your services so?”

14. Would you realise that discovery which in six months peopled that barren spot with thousands of men from all the civilised tribes upon earth, and in a few years must and will make despised Australia a queen among the nations—nations who must and will come with the best thing they have, wealth, talent, cunning, song, pencil, pen, tongue, arm, and lay them all at her feet for this one thing?

15. Would you behold this great discovery the same in appearance and magnitude as it met the eyes of the first discoverers, picked with a knife from the bottom of a calabash, separated at last by human art and gravity's great law from the meaner dust it had lurked in for a million years—

Then turn your eyes hither, for here it is:—



CHARLES READE.

(From “It is Never too Late to Mend.”)

choc'o-late
dex-ter-i-ty
li-que-fied

con-ceit'ed-ly
ques-ti-on
tre-mend'ous

in-spi-ra-tion
un-par'al-leled
lu-min-a-ry

Par.
1 strata, layers.

Par.
3. dissolve, is here incorrectly
used for *loosen* or *soften*.

Derivations, etc.

Par
8 dexterity, from *dexter*, the
right hand. The right | hand is more skilful than
the left

Oral Exercises.

1. Was the clay really *dissolved* or *liquefied*? Name three substances that can be dissolved in water, and three that cannot. Name a substance that can be both liquefied and dissolved.
2. Describe the process of washing for gold.
3. Explain "*diving into the vessel*," "*dead silence*."
4. Why did the "human mutes" feel injured?
5. Explain "*gravity's great law*."

Composition.

Write an essay on "Gold."



ROBERT LOUIS STEVENSON.

3.—A SCOT'S FIRST IMPRESSIONS OF ENGLAND.

1. England and Scotland differ in law, in history, in religion, in education, and in +

very look of nature and men's faces, not always widely, but always trenchantly.

2. Many particulars that struck Mr. Grant White, a Yankee, struck me, a Scot, no less forcibly; he and I felt ourselves foreigners on many common provocations. A Scotchman may tramp the better part of Europe and the United States, and never again receive so vivid an impression of foreign travel and strange lands and manners as on his first excursion into England.

3. The change from a hilly to a level country strikes him with delighted wonder. Along the flat horizon there arise the frequent, venerable towers of churches. He sees at the end of airy vistas the revolution of the windmill sails. He may go where he pleases in the future; he may see Alps, and Pyramids, and lions; but it will be hard to beat the pleasure of that moment.

4. There are, indeed, few merrier spectacles than that of many windmills bickering together in a fresh breeze over a woody country; their halting alacrity of movement, their pleasant business, making bread all day with uncouth gesticulations, their air, gigantically human, as of a creature half alive, put a spirit of romance into the tamest landscape. When the Scotch child sees them first he falls immediately in love; and from that time forward windmills keep turning in his dreams.

5. And so, in their degree, with every feature

Par.

1. strata, layers.

Par

3. dissolve, is here incorrectly used for *loosen* or *soften*.**Derivations, etc.**

Par

8 dexterity, from *dexter*, the right hand. The right

hand is more skilful than the left

Oral Exercises.

1. Was the clay really *dissolved* or *liquefied*? Name three substances that can be dissolved in water, and three that cannot. Name a substance that can be both liquefied and dissolved.
2. Describe the process of washing for gold.
3. Explain "*diving into the vessel*," "*dead silence*."
4. Why did the "human mutes" feel injured?
5. Explain "*gravity's great law*."

Composition.

Write an essay on "Gold."



ROBERT LOUIS STEVENSON.

3.—A SCOT'S FIRST IMPRESSIONS OF ENGLAND.

1. England and Scotland differ in law, in history, in religion, in education, and in the

very look of nature and men's faces, not always widely, but always trenchantly.

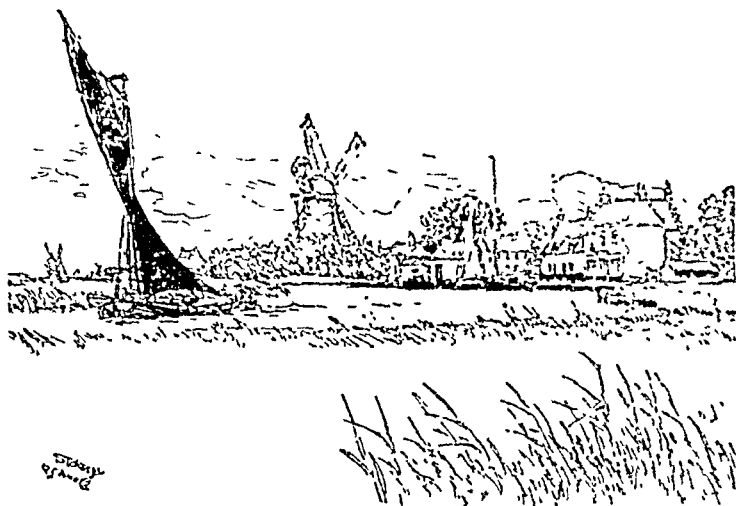
2. Many particulars that struck Mr. Grant White, a Yankee, struck me, a Scot, no less forcibly; he and I felt ourselves foreigners on many common provocations. A Scotchman may tramp the better part of Europe and the United States, and never again receive so vivid an impression of foreign travel and strange lands and manners as on his first excursion into England.

3. The change from a hilly to a level country strikes him with delighted wonder. Along the flat horizon there arise the frequent, venerable towers of churches. He sees at the end of airy vistas the revolution of the windmill sails. He may go where he pleases in the future; he may see Alps, and Pyramids, and lions; but it will be hard to beat the pleasure of that moment.

4. There are, indeed, few merrier spectacles than that of many windmills bickering together in a fresh breeze over a woody country; their halting alacrity of movement, their pleasant business, making bread all day with uncouth gesticulations, their air, gigantically human, as of a creature half alive, put a spirit of romance into the tamest landscape. When the Scotch child sees them first he falls immediately in love; and from that time forward windmills keep turning in his dreams.

5. And so, in their degree, with every feature

of the life and landscape. The warm, habitable age of towns and hamlets, the green, settled, ancient look of the country; the lush hedgerows, stiles, and privy pathways in the fields; the sluggish, brimming rivers; chalk and smock-frocks; chimes of bells and the rapid, pertly-sounding English speech—they are all new to the



NORFOLK BROADS.

curiosity; they are all set to English airs in the child's story that he tells himself at night.

6. The sharp edge of novelty wears off; the feeling is scotched, but I doubt whether it is ever killed. Rather it keeps returning, ever the more rarely and strangely, and even in scenes to which you have been long accustomed suddenly awakes and gives a relish to enjoyment or heightens the sense of isolation..

7. One thing especially continues unfamiliar to the Scotchman's eye—the domestic architecture, the look of streets and buildings; the quaint, venerable age of many, and the thin walls and warm colouring of all. We have, in Scotland, far



AN ENGLISH VILLAGE.

fewer ancient buildings, above all in country places; and those that we have are all of hewn or harled masonry. Wood has been sparingly used in their construction; the window-frames are sunken in the wall, not flat to the front, as in England; the roofs are steeper-pitched: even a

hill farm will have a massy, square, cold and permanent appearance.

8. English houses, in comparison, have the look of cardboard toys, such as a puff might shatter. And to this the Scotchman never becomes used. His eye can never rest consciously on one of these brick houses—rickles of brick, as he might call them—or on one of these flat-chested streets, but he is instantly reminded where he is, and instantly travels back in fancy to his home. “This is no my ain house; I ken by the biggin’ o’t.”

9. And yet perhaps it is his own, bought with his own money, the key of it long polished in his pocket; but it has not yet, and never will be, thoroughly adopted by his imagination; nor does he cease to remember that, in the whole length and breadth of his native country, there was no building even distantly resembling it.

R. L. STEVENSON.

(From “*The Foreigner at Home*,” by permission.)

trench'ant-ly	spec'ta-cles	i-so-la'tion
for'ci-bly	a-lac'ri-ty	arch'i-tect-ure
prov-o-ca'tions	ges-ti-cu-la'tions	con-struc'tion
ex-cur'sion	gi-gan'ti-cal-ly	per-man-ent
ven'er-a-ble	cu-ri-os-i-ty	con'sci-ous-ly
Pyr'a-mids	heigh'tens	im-a-gi-na'tion

- Par.
1. trenchantly, sharply, decidedly.
 2. on many common provocations. Many English features were strange to both Scot and American.
 4. bickering, moving quickly,

- Par.
- in a lively manner, as if carrying on a discussion.
 5. lush, richly growing.
 - „, privy pathways, by-ways through the fields, which are more common in England than in Scotland.

Par.

5. pertly sounding English speech. To a Scot the English accent and intonation seem very vivacious or lively.

6. scotched, injured.

„ isolation, loneliness.

7. domestic architecture, the fashion of the houses.

„ harled masonry, stone walls

Par.

covered with rough-cast, a plaster containing very small pebbles.

8. rickles, flimsy structures.

„ flat-chested streets, so-called because the windows are flat with the wall, so that there seems no depth in it.

„ the biggin' o't, Scots for "the building of it."

Derivations, etc.

Par.

2. Yankee, said to be derived from *Yengeese*, the Indian way of saying *English*. Several other derivations have been suggested. It was originally applied only to the people of New England (Massachusetts, Maine, New Hampshire, Connecticut, Rhode Island, and Vermont); in the Southern

Par.

States it is used of all Northerners; and in Britain it is often applied to all the people of the U.S.A.

3. vista, Italian word for a view, from Latin *video*, I see. Some other Italian words used in English are *influenza*, *umbrella*, *pianoforte*, *cameo*.

Oral Exercises.

1. Mention some of the chief differences in law, in history, etc., between England and Scotland.
2. Tell in your own words why Stevenson says that windmills appear romantic to a Scotsman.

Composition.

Write a letter as from a Scottish boy or girl visiting England, to a friend in Scotland, who has not seen England. Use Stevenson's ideas of the differences between England and Scotland.



4.—A GREYPORT LEGEND.

1. They ran through the streets of the seaport town;

They peered* from the decks of the ships that lay:

The cold sea-fog that came whitening down
Was never as cold or white as they.

“Ho, Starbuck and Pinckney and Tenterden!
Run for your shallops, gather your men,
Scatter your boats on the lower bay.”

2. Good cause for fear! In the thick midday
The hulk that lay by the rotting pier,
Filled with the children in happy play,
Parted its moorings, and drifted clear,—
Drifted clear beyond reach or call,—
Thirteen children they were in all,—
All adrift in the lower bay:

3. Said a hard-faced skipper, “God help us all!
She will not float till the turning tide!”
Said his wife, “My darling will hear my call.
Whether in sea or heaven she bide.”



"DECALMED BY THE SHORES OF AGE."

And she lifted a quavering voice and high,
 Wild and strange as a sea-bird's cry,
 Till they shuddered and wondered at her side.

4. The fog drove down on each labouring crew,
 Veiled each from each and the sky and shore :
 There was not a sound but the breath they drew,
 And the lap of water and creak of oar ;
 And they felt the breath of the downs, fresh
 blown
 O'er leagues of clover and cold gray stone,
 But not from the lips that had gone before.
5. They come no more. But they tell the tale,
 That, when fogs are thick on the harbour reef,
 The mackerel fishers shorten sail
 For the signal they know will bring relief ;
 For the voices of children, still at play
 In a phantom hulk that drifts away
 Through channels whose waters never fail.
6. It is but a foolish shipman's tale,
 A theme for a poet's idle page ;
 But still, when the mists of doubt prevail,
 And we lie becalmed by the shores of Age,
 We hear from the misty troubled shore
 The voice of the children gone before,
 Drawing the soul to its anchorage.

BRET HARTE.

Ver.

1. shallops, small boats, from
 French *chaloupe*, which
 comes from Dutch *sloop*—
 English *sloop*.
 2. hulk, mastless vessel.

Ver.

3. skipper, shipmaster, from the
 Dutch.
 „ quavering, trembling ; con-
 nected with *quiver*.
 „ shuddered, trembled with
 fear or horror.

Derivations, etc.

Ver.

2. pier. What other meaning has this word besides that which it has in the text?

„ drift, originally an abstract noun formed from *drive*. Give other examples of nouns that are used as verbs.

Ver.

2. adrift. Give other examples of the use of the prefix *a* with the meaning of *on*.

„ becalmed. The prefix *be* is used to form verbs from adjectives and nouns. Give other examples of its use.

Oral Exercises.

1. Explain the phrases:—“*mists of doubt*,” “*shores of age*,” the soul’s “*anchorage*.”
2. Tell the story in your own words.

Composition.

Write an essay on “Accidents.”

5.—THE BREAD-RIOT.

[During the wars with France at the beginning of this century there was much distress in the country ; and sometimes mobs assailed the premises of millers and grain merchants, whom they accused of keeping food from the starving people. The following passage is the story of the attack on the mill of Abel Fletcher, a Quaker, told by his son Phineas.]

1. It was the year 1800, long known in English households as ‘the dear year.’ The present generation can have no conception of what a terrible time that was—War, Famine, and Tumult stalking hand-in-hand, and no one to stay them. For between the upper and lower classes, there was a great gulf fixed ; the rich ground the faces of the poor, the poor hated, yet meanly succumbed to the rich. Neither had Christianity enough boldly to cross the line of demarcation, and prove, the humbler, that they were men,—the higher and wiser, that they were gentlemen.

2. These troubles, which were everywhere abroad, reached us even in our quiet town of Norton Bury. Even the stolid, starved patience of our Norton Bury poor had come to an end at last—they had followed the example of many others. There was a bread-riot in the town.

3. God only knows how terrible those ‘riots’ were; when the people rose in desperation, not from some delusion of crazy, blood-thirsty, ‘patriotism,’ but to get food for themselves, their wives, and children. God only knows what madness was in each individual heart of that concourse of poor wretches, styled ‘the mob,’ when every man took up arms, certain that there were before him but two alternatives, starving or—hanging.

* * * * *

4. There was a private path from the tanyard to the mill, along the river-side; by this we went, in silence. When we reached the spot it was deserted; but further down the river we heard a scuffling, and saw a number of men breaking down our garden wall.

5. “They think he is gone home,” whispered John; “we’ll get in here the safer. Quick, Phineas.”

6. We crossed the little bridge; John took a key out of his pocket, and let us into the mill by a small door—the only entrance, and that was barred and trebly barred within. It had good need to be in such times.

7. The mill was a queer, musty, silent place, especially the machinery room, the sole flooring of which was the dark, dangerous stream. We stood there a good while—it was the safest place, having no windows. Then we followed my father to the top storey, where he kept his bags of grain. There were very many; enough, in these times, to make a large fortune by—a cursed fortune wrung out of human lives.

8. “Oh! how could my father——”

“Hush!” whispered John, “it was for his son’s sake, you know.”

9. But while we stood, and with a meaning *but rather grim smile* Abel Fletcher counted his bags, worth almost as much as bags of gold—we heard a hammering at the door below. The rioters were come.

10. Miserable ‘rioters’!—A handful of weak, starved men—pelting us with stones and words. One pistol-shot might have routed them all—but my father’s doctrine of non-resistance forbade. Small as their force seemed, there was something at once formidable and pitiful in the low howl that reached us at times.

11. “Bring out the bags!—Us mun have bread!” “Throw down thy corn, Abel Fletcher!”

12. “Abel Fletcher *will* throw it down to ye, ye knaves,” said my father, leaning out of the upper window; while a sound, half curses, half cheers of triumph, answered him from below.

13. “That is well,” exclaimed John, eagerly

"Thank you—thank you, Mr Fletcher—I knew you would yield at last."

"Didst thee, lad?" said my father, stopping short.

"Not because they forced you—not to save your life—but because it was right."

"Help me with this bag," was all the reply.

11. It was a great weight, but not too great for John's young arm, nervous and strong. He hauled it up.

"Now, open the window—dash the panes through—it matters not. On to the window, I tell thee."

15. "But if I do, the bag will fall into the water. You cannot—oh, no!—you cannot mean that!"

"Haul it up to the window, John Halifax."

But John remained immovable.

16. "I must do it myself, then;" and, in the desperate effort he made, somehow the bag of grain fell, and fell on his lame foot. Tortured into frenzy with the pain—or else, I will still believe, my old father would not have done such a deed—his failing strength seemed doubled and trebled. In an instant more he had got the bag half through the window, and the next sound we heard was its heavy splash in the water below.

17. Flung into the water, the precious wheat, and in the very sight of the famished rioters! A howl of fury and despair arose. Some plunged into the water, ere the eddies left by the falling



ABEL FIETCHER THROWING THE CORN INTO THE WATER.

mass had ceased—but it was too late. Some sharp substance had cut the bag, and we saw thrown up to the surface, and whirled down to the Avon. thousands of dancing grains.

18. A few of the men swam, or waded after them, clutching a handful here or there—but by

the mill-pool the river ran swift, and the wheat had all soon disappeared, except what remained in the bag when it was drawn on shore. Over even that they fought like demons.

19. We could not look at them—John and I. He put his hand over his eyes, muttering the Name that, young man as he was, I had never yet heard irreverently and thoughtlessly on his lips. It was a sight that would move any one to cry for pity unto the Great Father of the human family.

20. Abel Fletcher sat on his remaining bags, in an exhaustion that I think was not all physical pain. The paroxysm of anger past, he, ever a just man, could not fail to be struck with what he had done. He seemed subdued, even to something like remorse.

Mrs. CRAIK.

(From "*John Halifax, Gentleman.*")

suc-cumbed'

de-mar-ca'tion

pa'tri-o-tism

al-ter'na-tives

im-mov-ab-le

ir-rev'er-ent-ly

ex-haust'ion

phys'ic-al

par-ox-ysm

Par.

1. succumbed, yielded.
2. stolid, not given to a show of feeling.
11. doctrine of non-resistance. The Friends or "Quakers"

Par.

- think it wrong to use force on any occasion.
12. us mun, we must.
17. frenzy, mad excitement.
21. paroxysm, sharp attack.

Derivations, etc.

Par.

1. time is from the French word *temps*, meaning *time*, which is derived from the Latin *tempus*, time.
- „ demarcation is from the old Teutonic word *mark*, the border of a country. The

names of the old English Kingdom of *Mercia* and of the Scottish county the *Merse* (Berwickshire) are said to be derived from this word. The title Marquis (i.e., *guard of the mark*) comes from it.

Par.

2. starve originally meant *die*.
In German, *sterben* has still
this meaning.
3. mob, a disorderly crowd.
Contracted from Latin *mobile vulgus*, easily moved
common people.

Par.

6. safe, from Latin *salvus*,
safe.
- „ quick originally meant *living*,
as in *quickset*. Give any
other word or expression in
which it still has this mean-
ing.

Oral Exercises.

1. Explain in your own words the meaning of the phrases :—“*the dear year*,” and “*a bread-riot*.”
2. Explain the phrase :—“*a cursed fortune wrung out of human lives*.”
3. What is the reference in the phrase “*a great gulf*”?
4. What is the meaning of “*the rich ground the faces of the poor*”?
- 5 How did Abel Fletcher meet the mob's demand for food?

Composition.

Write from memory a summary of the story.

6.—THE PLAGUE AT EYAM.

PART I.

1. Among the dales of northern Derbyshire lies the picturesque village of Eyam. Its position and natural beauty render it very worthy of a visit. To the north rise wooded heights, and beyond them again is a free open moor from which one may get a beautiful view of the valley of the Derwent. Southward from it runs Eyam Dale to join Middleton Dale with its quaint little village of Stony Middleton. In these two valleys may be seen many fine examples of the white limestone cliffs set in

dark greenery which are so characteristic of northern Derbyshire or Peakland scenery.

2. To the south-east is Curbar Edge, a hill which has called forth a beautiful poem from Mr. William Watson; and a little farther off is



A DERBYSHIRE DALE (MIDDLETON DALE).

Chatsworth, the splendid 'Palace of the Peak.' It is a beautiful spot in a beautiful country.

3. But the fame of Eyam rests on a nobler foundation than the picturesque. More than two hundred years ago its inhabitants gave to the world an example of self-sacrificing heroism quite as grand as that of the defenders of any besieged city. For four awful months they yielded themselves to the ravages of the plague, making no effort to escape, lest in their escape

they should carry the pestilence to their neighbours.

4. In 1665 the Great Plague visited London and carried off 100,000 victims out of a population of 500,000. The city was for a time almost deserted. Those who could fled to the country or to the ships in the river, and it often happened that they took death to those among whom they went.

5. In September of that year, a tailor in Eyam received from London a parcel of patterns and old clothes. As he opened it he noticed a strange smell, and supposing that the goods were damp he held them to the fire. In so doing he received the seeds of the disease, and immediately sickened. In a few days he died. A fortnight later the master of the house,—for the tailor was a stranger,—died also.

6. In September, six people died; in October, twenty-three fell victims to the disease. The inhabitants of the village, which then contained about three hundred and fifty people, now recognised that this strange new sickness which had appeared among them was the plague of which they had heard vaguely from far-distant London.

7. Yet they hoped that the healthy situation of their village, and the approach of winter would drive off the dreadful visitor; and at first it seemed that their hopes would be realised. In November, only seven died, and though the number went up to nine in December, in January no more than five fell a prey to the

pestilence. In May, the number was reduced to four, and the people thought that the worst was over. They were soon to be undeceived, for in June nineteen people died.

8. During the winter some of the villagers had left the place, and Mr. Mompesson, the rector, had sent his children away. Now the people began to think of general flight. Had they carried out this purpose it is very likely that all the towns and villages of northern Derbyshire would have been infected. But the rector, who with his young and beautiful wife had come to them little more than a year before, persuaded them against this course.

9. By his advice they resolved to stay where they were, to live or die as God should appoint, but not to incur the guilt of bringing death to their neighbours. Certain wells and stones were chosen as marking the limit beyond which they were not to go. To these places the Earl of Devonshire, to whom the rector had appealed, agreed to send food and other supplies which they might require; and so the little town cut itself off from its neighbours for its awful trial.

10. Two men stayed to be the leaders and comforters of the people. Thomas Stanley had been the rector during the Commonwealth, but had been ejected from his living on St. Bartholomew's day 1662. In 1664 William Mompesson had been appointed to follow Stanley's successor, but the dispossessed clergyman had remained in

the neighbourhood carrying on his work as well as he might. Now, he and Mompesson, opponents as they were in many things, enemies as they might well have been, joined together in their work of mercy among the people to whom they had ministered.

11. Mompesson wished his wife to go to safer quarters,—and surely we may pardon this loving inconsistency on his part—but she refused to leave him.

(Adapted from Wood's "History of Eyam.")

pic-tu-resque'
char-ac-ter-ist-ic
her'o-ism

pes'ti-lence
im-me'di-ate-ly
rec'og-nised

Mom-pes'son
dis-pos-sessed'
in-con-sist'en-cy

Par.

1. Eyam (pronounced *Ee'-am*), nearly midway between Buxton and Chesterfield.
- „ characteristic of, giving character to, marking out.
2. William Watson, a living poet, author of *Wordsworth's Grave*, *Lachrymæ Musarum* (that is, *The Tears of the Muses*, a lament for Tennyson), and other works.
- „ Chatsworth, near Bakewell, the residence of the Duke of Devonshire, magnificently built and furnished.

Par.

8. rector, clergyman of the parish.
10. Commonwealth, the republican government from 1649 to 1660.
- „ St. Bartholomew's day, 1662, when the clergymen who would not use the forms of prayers and service adopted by the government were driven from their parishes.
11. inconsistency. Mompesson did not seem to be acting up to his principles in urging his wife to depart while tolling the villagers to remain.

Derivations, etc.

Par.

1. picturesque; *esque* means like. Give other examples.
- „ dales, from the Scandinavian. Another form of the word is *dell*.
- „ quaint, from Lat. *cognitus*, known. Originally it

Par.

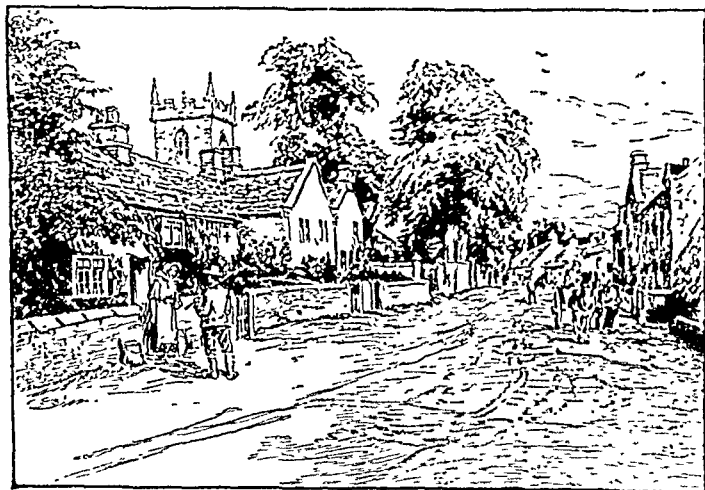
- meant *cultivated, neat, then strange, odd, uncommon*.
5. fortnight, that is a *fourteen-night*.
8. rector, from Lat. *rego, rectum*, I rule. Hence *rector* of the parish in religious matters.

Oral Exercises.

1. Tell in your own words how the plague came to Eyam.
2. Why would it have been natural for Stanley and Mompesson to be enemies?
3. Describe the precautions taken by the people of Eyam to prevent the spread of the plague.

Composition.

Write an essay on "The Plague."



EYAM VILLAGE (*house where the plague began marked +*).

7.—THE PLAGUE AT EYAM.**PART II.**

1. For four months the plague went on. In July fifty-six persons died, in August seventy-seven, in September twenty-four; fourteen more fell victims in October, but on the 11th of that month the plague was stayed.

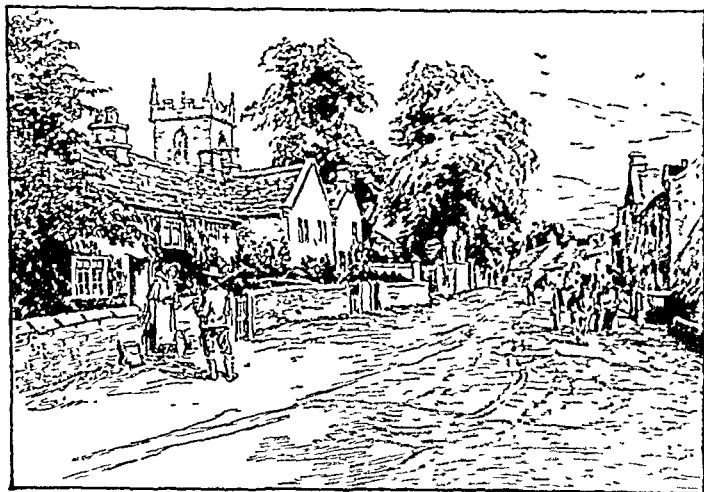
2. Had the inhabitants chosen, they might have left their stricken abodes. There was no force of

Oral Exercises.

1. Tell in your own words how the plague came to Eyam.
2. Why would it have been natural for Stanley and Mompesson to be enemies?
3. Describe the precautions taken by the people of Eyam to prevent the spread of the plague.

Composition.

Write an essay on "The Plague."



EYAM VILLAGE (*house where the plague began marked +*).

7.—THE PLAGUE AT EYAM.**PART II.**

1. For four months the plague went on. In July fifty-six persons died, in August seventy-seven, in September twenty-four; fourteen more fell victims in October, but on the 11th of that month the plague was stayed.

2. Had the inhabitants chosen, they might have left their stricken abodes. There was no force of

soldiers to hold them in, but their own strong resolution, and the advice and encouragement of their two pastors, kept them at their post. They offered themselves up as a voluntary sacrifice for the sake of their country.

3. Many pitiful stories are told of that time of horror. Among the earliest victims were the father, the son, and four daughters of a family named Sydall, who all died in October 1665. The mother and one daughter, Emmott, were left. Emmott was engaged to be married to a young man of the name of Rowland, who lived in the neighbouring village of Stony Middleton. During the winter he frequently visited Eyam, but at last the people among whom he lived insisted that he should discontinue so dangerous a practice.

4. He was not able to revisit Eyam till November or December 1666. As he passed along its deserted street, he seemed to be in a dwelling of the dead. At last he met a boy who greeted him with the words, "Ah, Rowland, thy Emmott's dead and buried in the Cussey Dell." The poor youth hastened to the once happy home of the Sydalls, and found grass growing on its earthen floor. Emmott had died in April. Her mother still lived, the only one left out of the family of eight.

5. Catherine Mompesson, the rector's loving and heroic wife, was one of those who perished. Her husband had thus his own great private grief added to his sorrow for his flock.

6. Perhaps the saddest of all among so many sad events, was what happened at Rily or Roylee, about a quarter of a mile from the village. There dwelt two families,—the Talbots, consisting of husband, wife, three sons, and three daughters of whom one, however, happened to be away from Eyam when the plague began;—and the Hancocks, husband, wife, and six children.

7. For ten months these two families escaped. Then in a few weeks *all* the Talbots died. As each died the survivors buried the body, and the last of the Talbots was buried by the Hancocks. The latter family now caught the infection, and at last only the mother was left. It is said that the people of Stony Middleton watched her from day to day as she laid her dead in the graves she dug for them. The burial place of these two families is marked by an enclosure and several gravestones on the moor.

8. When at last the plague was over, and the survivors were able to take account of their losses, it was found that from September 1665, to October 1666, two hundred and sixty-seven out of a population of about three hundred and fifty had died. Of these all except eight were victims of the plague.

9. One can understand, but hardly realise, the desolation which lay upon the village. Some of the inhabitants had left their homes before the policy of isolation had been adopted; others took the earliest opportunity after the visitation had

passed to leave a spot so full of awful memories. A mere handful of people remained in the once happy and prosperous hamlet. A quaint but sombre measure of the emptiness of the place is given in the statement that, for many years after the plague, when a death occurred in Eyam two dozen funeral cakes sufficed for all the inhabitants and the outside mourners as well.

10. There are few more pathetic pictures than that of these brave-hearted villagers devoting themselves to almost certain death for the sake of their friends and neighbours. The soldiers who maintain a post against mighty odds, and the medical man who fearlessly faces death in the performance of his duty, have at least the stimulus of effort to sustain them. The men and women of Eyam had no such support; but for these long months had to sit still, unable to do anything except wait for the quick or slow approach of apparently inevitable death.

11. Great honour is due to the memory of the two clergymen, Mompesson and Stanley, who, separated as they were by what might have seemed irreconcilable differences, showed by their unselfish efforts that they were true servants of Christ. The story of Eyam, its pastors and its people, is one that may well be treasured as more glorious than many great victories over enemies armed with cannon and sword.

(Adapted from Wood's "History of Eyam.")

res-o-lu'tion	des-o-la'tion	fu'ner-al
en-cour-age-ment	pol'i-cy	in-hab'it-ants
vol-un-ta-ry	i-so-la'tion	pa-thet'ic
sac'ri-fice	op-por-tu'ni-ty	med'i-cal
dis-con-tin'ue	som'bre	in-ev'i-ta-ble
sur-vi'vors	oc-curred'	ir-rec-on-ci-la-ble

Par.

2. voluntary, willing.

7. survivors, those who remained
alive.

9. policy, plan.

,, isolation, separation.

Par.

9. quaint, strange and inter-
esting.

,, sombre, gloomy.

10. stimulus, spur.

,, inevitable, unavoidable.

Derivations, etc.

Par.

2. pastor, from Lat. *pasco*, I
give food (as to sheep),*pastor*, a shepherd; hence a
spiritual shepherd.

Oral Exercise.

Tell the story of the Sydalls, and of the Rily families.

Composition.

Write an essay on "Heroism."

8.—THE BATTLE OF FLODDEN.

[Blount and Fitz-Eustace, two of Marmion's squires, had been left to guard the Lady Clare. From their position on a hill they saw the beginning of the Battle of Flodden.]

PART I.

And why stands Scotland idly now,
 Dark Flodden! on thy airy brow,
 Since England gains the pass the while,
 And struggles through the deep defile?
What checks the fiery soul of James? 5
 Why sits that champion of the dames
 Inactive on his steed,
 And sees, between him and his land,
 Between him and Tweed's southern strand,
 His host Lord Surrey lead? 10

What vails the vain knight-errant's brand?
O, Douglas, for thy leading wand!

Fierce Randolph, for thy speed!
O for one hour of Wallace wight,
Or well-skilled Bruce to rule the fight, 15
And cry, "Saint Andrew and our right!"
Another sight had seen that morn,
From Fate's dark book a leaf been torn,
And Flodden had been Bannockburn.

The precious hour has passed in vain, 20
And England's host has gained the plain;
Wheeling their march and circling still,
Around the base of Flodden-hill.

Blount and Fitz-Eustace rested still
With Lady Clare upon the hill; 25
On which (for far the day was spent),
The western sunbeams now were bent.
The cry they heard, its meaning knew,
Could plain their distant comrades view.

Sadly to Blount did Eustace say, 30
"Unworthy office here to stay!
No hope of gilded spurs to-day.—
But, see! look up—on Flodden bent,
The Scottish foe has fired his tent."

And sudden, as he spoke, 35
From the sharp ridges of the hill,
All downward to the banks of Till,
Was wreathed in sable smoke.

Volumed and vast, and rolling far,
The cloud enveloped Scotland's war, 40
As down the hill they broke ;
Nor martial shout, nor minstrel tone,
Announced their march, their tread alone,
At times one warning trumpet blown,
At times a stifled hum, 45



Told England, from his mountain-throne,
King James did rushing come.—
Scarce could they hear or see their foes,
Until at weapon-point they close.—
They close in clouds of smoke and dust, 50
With sword-sway and with lance's thrust.;
And such a yell was there,
And life and death were in the shout,
Recoil and rally, charge and rout,

And triumph and despair. 55
Of sudden and portentous birth,
As if men fought upon the earth
And fiends in upper air ;
Long looked the anxious squires ; their eye
Could in the darkness nought descry. 60

At length the freshening western blast
Aside the shroud of battle cast ;
And, first, the ridge of mingled spears
Above the brightening cloud appears ;
And in the smoke the pennons flew, 65
As in the storm the white seamew.
Then marked they, dashing broad and far
The broken billows of the war,
And plumed crests of chieftains brave,
Floating like foam upon the wave, 70
But nought distinct they see :
Wide raged the battle on the plain ;
Spears shook, and falchions flashed amain,
Fell England's arrow-flight like rain,
Crests rose, and stooped, and rose again, 75
Wild and disorderly.

Amid the scene of tumult, high
They saw Lord Marmion's falcon fly ;
And stainless Tunstall's banner white,
And Edmund Howard's lion bright, 80
Still bear them bravely in the fight ;
Although against them come,
Of gallant Gordons many a one,

And many a stubborn Highlandman
 And many a rugged Border clan,
 With Huntly and with Home.

85

Sir WALTER SCOTT.

(From "Marmion.")

champ'i-on
 pre-ci-ous

en-vel'oped
 mar'tial

por-ten'tous
 fal'chions

Line.

6. champion of the dames.
 James had invaded England
 as the knight of the Queen
 of France.
11. knight-errant, a knight who
 went about seeking for
 wrongs to redress; one who
 leaves his own duties to
 concern himself with those
 of other people. James
 owed his first duty to the

Line.

- people of Scotland, not to
 the Queen of France.
14. wight, brave, strong.
32. gilded spurs, worn by knights.
 Eustace means that being
 merely spectators, they had
 no chance of displaying
 bravery such as would win
 knighthood as its reward.
33. bent, the stiff moorland grass.

Derivations, etc.

Line.

6. champion, from Lat. *campus*, a field; hence one
 who is familiar with battle
 fields; hence a valiant
 fighter.
11. errant, from Lat. *erro*, I
 wander.
- „ brand, a sword; that which
 has been made by the help
 of fire or *burning*. Note
 the *metathesis* (change of
 position) of the *r*.
39. volumed, from *volvo* (or *voluo*),
 I roll up. A book is still
 called a volume, because,

Line.

- among the Romans, books
 were rolls of parchment.
42. martial, from Latin *Mars*
 (*Mart-is*), the Roman god of
 war.
59. squire, from Latin *scutum*, a
 shield, *scutarius*, a shield-
 bearer, through old French
escuyer, and English
esquire.
- 73, 78. falchion, falcon, from Lat.
falx, a reaping hook, be-
 cause of the curved blade
 of the sword, and curved
 beak of the bird.

Oral Exercises.

1. In your own words explain the mistake in generalship (strategy) made by King James at Flodden.
2. Explain "*airy brow*," "*Saint Andrew*."
3. Describe, in your own words, the Scottish charge.

Composition.

Write an essay on "*Rashness*."

9.—THE BATTLE OF FLODDEN.

PART II.

Far on the left, unseen the while,
Stanley broke Lennox and Argyle ;
Though there the western mountaineer
Rushed with bare bosom on the spear,
And flung the feeble targe aside, 5
And with both hands the broadsword plied :
'Twas vain :—But fortune, on the right,
With fickle smile, cheered Scotland's fight.
Then fell that spotless banner white,
The Howard's lion fell ; 10
Yet still Lord Marmion's falcon flew
With wavering flight, while fiercer grew
Around the battle yell.

The border slogan rent the sky !
A Home ! a Gordon ! was the cry ! 15
Loud were the clanging blows !
Advanced,—forced back,—now low, now high,
The pennon sunk and rose ;
As bends the bark's mast in the gale,
When rent are rigging, shrouds, and sail, 20
It sank amid the foes.

By this, though deep the evening fell
Still rose the battle's deadly swell ;
For still the Scots around their king,
Unbroken, fought in desperate ring. 25
Where's now their victor vaward wing,
Where Huntly, and where Home ?

Then skilful Surrey's sage commands
 Led back from strife his shattered bands ;
 And from the charge they drew, 60
 As mountain waves from wasted lands,
 Sweep back to ocean blue.

Then did their loss his foemen know ;
 Their king, their lords, their mightiest, low,
 They melted from the field as snow, 65
 When streams are swoln and south winds blow,
 Dissolves in silent dew.

Tweed's echoes heard the ceaseless plash,
 While many a broken band,
 Disordered, through her currents dash, 70
 To gain the Scottish land ;
 To town and tower, to down and dale,
 To tell red Flodden's dismal tale,
 And raise the universal wail.

Tradition, legend, tune, and song, 75
 Shall many an age that wail prolong :
 Still from the sire the son shall hear
 Of the stern strife, and carnage drear,
 Of Flodden's fatal field,
 Where shivered was fair Scotland's spear, 80
 And broken was her shield.

Sir WALTER SCOTT.

(From "Marmion.")

des-per-ate
 Font-a-ra'-bi-an

pal'a-din
 squad'-rons

ser'-ried
 phal'-anx

Line.

26. vaward, vanward or advanced.

28. that dread horn on Roncesvalles died. The Song of Roland tells how the rear-guard of the army of Charlemagne, returning from an expedition against the Moors, was attacked by treachery in the pass of Ron-

Line.

cesvalles, near Fontarabia. Roland and many other knights were slain, but the last blast of Roland's horn brought Charlemagne back to take vengeance.

32. paladin, a hero knight.

53. phalanx, a closely arrayed body of men.

Derivations, etc.

Line.

28. blast, connected with *blow* and *blare*.32. peer, from Lat. *par*, equal.53. serried, from Lat. *sera*, a bar;

Line.

hence closely fastened or fixed.

78. carnage, from Latin *caro* (*carnis*), flesh.

Oral Exercises.

1. Explain the following: "*slogan*," "*fortune with fickle smile*," "*feeble targe*."
2. Who were Douglas, Randolph, Wallace, Bruce?

Composition.

Write an essay on "The Battle of Flodden."

10.—THE EARL OF BEACONSFIELD.

1. The deceased statesman had certain great qualities on which it would be idle for me to enlarge;—his extraordinary intellectual powers, for instance, were as well known to others as to me. But other qualities there were in him, not merely intellectual or immediately connected with the conduct of affairs, but with regard to which I should wish, were I younger, to stamp the recollection of them on my mind for my own future guidance, and which I strongly recommend to those who are younger for notice and imitation.

2. These characteristics were not only written

in a marked manner on his career but were possessed by him in a degree undoubtedly extraordinary. I speak, for example, of his strength of will, his long-sighted persistency of purpose, reaching from his first entrance on the avenue of life to its very close; his remarkable power of self government; and, last not least, his great Parliamentary courage which I, who have been associated in the course of my life with some scores of Ministers, have never seen surpassed.

3. There were other points in his character on which I cannot refrain from saying a word or two. I wish to express my admiration for those strong sympathies of race, for the sake of which he was always ready to risk popularity and influence.

4. A like sentiment I feel towards the strength of his sympathies with that brotherhood to which he thought, and justly thought, himself entitled to belong—the brotherhood of men of letters. It was only within the last few days that I have read in a very interesting book, “The Autobiography of Thomas Cooper,” how in the year 1844, when his influence with his party was not yet established, Mr. Cooper came to him in the character of a struggling literary man who was also a Chartist, and the then Mr. Disraeli met him with the most active cordial kindness—so ready was his sympathy for genius.

5. There was also another feeling which now may be referred to without indelicacy, I mean his profound, devoted, tender, and grateful affec-

tion for his wife, which, if it deprived him of the honour of public obsequies—I know not whether it did so—has, nevertheless, left him a more permanent title, as one who knew amid the calls and temptations of political life what was due to the sanctity and strength of domestic affections,



THE EARL OF BEACONSFIELD.

and made him in that respect an example to the country.

6. In expressing a hope that this debate may not be unduly lengthened, I wish that my contribution to it may be confined within the limits of necessity, and I have now set before the House

all that is necessary - - perhaps all that it is warrantable for me to say; but there is one slighter matter to which I wish to have the satisfaction of referring.

7. There is much misapprehension abroad as to the personal sentiments between public men who are divided in policy. Their words may necessarily from time to time be sharp, their judgments may necessarily be severe, but the general idea of persons less informed than those within Parliamentary circles is that they are actuated by sentiments of intense antipathy or hatred for one another.

8. I wish to take this occasion—if with permission of the House I may for a moment degenerate into egotism—of recording my firm conviction that in all the judgments ever delivered by Lord Beaconsfield upon myself, he never was actuated by sentiments of personal antipathy.

The Right Hon. W. E. GLADSTONE.

(Part of a Speech delivered in the House of Commons. By permission, from the report in "The Times.")

in-tel-lec'tu-al	as-so-ci-a-ted	con-tri-bu'tion
char-ac-ter-ist'ics	sym-pa-thies	an-tip'a-thy
per-sist'en-cy	in-del-i-ca-cy	de-gen'er-ate
av'en-ue	ob'se-qui-es	eg'ot-ism

Par.

1. to enlarge, to speak much.
2. written on his career, shown in his life.
3. sympathies of race, kindly feeling to the Jews, with whom Lord Beaconsfield was connected by blood, though not by religion.

Par.

4. men of letters, writers. Lord Beaconsfield wrote several novels.
- „ Chartist, one who demanded the reforms called "The People's Charter," and who therefore was an opponent of Mr. Disraeli.

Par.

5. public obsequies, a public funeral. Lord Beaconsfield desired to be buried beside his wife.
 „ domestic affections, love of family.

Par.

6. it is warrantable for me to say, I have a right to say.
 7. antipathy, feeling of strong dislike.
 8. egotism, too great reference to feeling or thought about oneself.

Derivations, etc.

Par.

1. deceased, from Latin *de*, down, *cedo* (*cess-um*). I go.
 2. avenue, from Latin *ad*, to, *venio*, I come.
 3. sympathies, from Greek *syn*, with, *pathein*, to feel.
 4. autobiography, from Greek

Par.

- autos*, self, *bios*, life, *grapho*, I write.
 5. obsequies, from Latin *ob*, in the way of, and *sequor*, I follow.
 7. antipathy, from Greek *anti*, against, *pathein*, to feel.
 8. egotism, from Latin *ego*, I.

Oral Exercises.

1. Name the qualities of Lord Beaconsfield, observation of which Mr. Gladstone thought especially useful for young statesmen.
2. Narrate the incident of Mr. Disraeli's kindness to Thomas Cooper.
3. What does Mr Gladstone say as to the feeling between parliamentary opponents?

Composition.

Write an essay on "The Government of Great Britain."

11.—MR. GLADSTONE.

1. Sir, how is it possible for us on the present occasion to form, I will not say an estimate of a life so complex as that (of Mr. Gladstone), a life far from exhausted by political considerations, a life exuberant outside the work of this House, the work of party politics, the work of imperial administration—how is it possible, I say, for any man to pretend to exhaust the many-sided aspects of such a life even on an occasion of this sort?

2. I, Sir, feel myself unequal even to dealing with what is perhaps more strictly germane to

this address,—I mean Mr. Gladstone as a politician, as a Minister, as a leader of public thought, as an eminent servant of the Queen. And if I venture to say anything to the House, it is rather of Mr. Gladstone as the greatest member of the greatest deliberative assembly that so far the world has seen.

3. Sir, I think it is the language of sober and of unexaggerated truth to say that there is no gift which would enable one to move, to influence, to adorn, an assembly like this that Mr. Gladstone did not possess in a supereminent degree.

4. Debaters as ready, orators as finished, there may have been. It may have been given to others to sway as skilfully this critical assembly, or to appeal with as much directness and force to the simpler instincts of great masses of our countrymen, but it has been given to no man to combine all those great gifts as they were combined in the person of Mr. Gladstone.

5. From the conversational discussion appropriate to our work in Committee, to the most sustained eloquence fitting some high argument and some great historical occasion, every weapon of Parliamentary warfare was wielded by him with the sureness and the ease of a perfect, absolute, and complete mastery.

6. I would not venture myself to pronounce an opinion as to whether he was most excellent in the exposition of some complicated budget of finance, or of legislation, or whether he shone

most in the heat of the extemporary debate. At least this we may say,—that from the humbler arts of ridicule or invective, to the subtlest dialectic, the most persuasive eloquence, the most cogent appeals to everything that was highest and best in the audience he was addressing—every instrument which could find a place in



MR. GLADSTONE.

the armoury of a member of this House he had at his command without premeditation, without forethought, at any moment, and in the form best suited to carry out its purpose.

7. I suppose that each one of us who has had the good fortune to be able to watch any part

of that wonderful career must have in mind some particular example which seems to him to embody the best and greatest excellences of this most excellent member of Parliament.

8. Sir, alas, let no man hope to be able to reconstruct from our records any living likeness of these great works of genius. The words, indeed, are there, lying side by side with the words of lesser men in an equality as if of death; but the spirit, the fire, the inspiration, are gone; and he who could alone revive them, he who could alone show us what these works really were by reproducing them for us; he, alas! has now been taken away.

9. Posterity must take it upon our testimony what he was to those, friends or foes, whose fortune it was to be able to hear him. We, who thus heard him, know that though our days be prolonged and though it may be our fortune to see the dawn or even the meridian of other men destined to illustrate this House and to do a great and glorious service to their Sovereign and their country, we shall never again in this assembly see any man who can reproduce for us what Mr. Gladstone was, who can show to those who never heard him how much they have lost.

The Right Hon. A. J. BALFOUR.

(Part of a Speech delivered in the House of Commons. By permission from the report in "The Times.")

ex-u'ber-ant	dis-cus'sion	subt'lest
ad-min-is-tra'tion	ap-pro-pri-ate	di-a-lec'tic
ger-mane	el'o-quencè	per-sua'sive
de-lib'er-a-tive	com'pli-ca-ted	au'di-ence
un-ex-ag-ger-a-ted	le-gis-la'tion	pre-med-i-ta'tion
su-per-em'in-ent	ex-tem'por-a-ry	pos-ter'i-ty
con-ver-sa'tion-al	rid'i-cule	sove'reign

Par.

1. complex, many-sided.
- „ exuberant, very fully developed, rich.
2. germane to, connected with.
- „ deliberative assembly, a body for considering and debating important matters.
5. appropriate to, fitted to.
- „ in Committee. When considering details, the House of Commons goes “into Committee,” and the members speak as frequently as they choose, instead of being limited to one speech on each motion, as in debates of the House.
- „ sustained, steady, continued.
- „ weapon of Parliamentary warfare, method of helping

Par.

- or hindering a motion or policy in Parliament.
6. Budget, the annual statement of the expenses likely to be incurred by the nation, and the taxes necessary to be imposed to meet these expenses.
- „ finance, money matters.
- „ extemporaneous, unarranged.
- „ invective, attack.
- „ subtlest, most skilful and profound.
- „ dialectic, argument.
- „ cogent, powerful and convincing.
- „ premeditation, arrangement or consideration beforehand.
- „ posterity, the people of future times.

Derivations, etc.

Par.

1. possible, from Latin *posse*, to be able.
- „ administration, from Latin *ad*, to, *minister*, a servant.
2. germane, from Latin *germanus*, a brother; hence closely related.
3. unexaggerated, from English *un*, not, Latin *ex*, out of, *agger*, a heap.

Par.

6. invective, from Latin *in*, into, *vehor* (*vectus*), I ride, *invehor*, I charge.
- „ cogent, from Latin *cogo*, I force.
9. posterity, from Latin *post*, after; those that come after.
- „ meridian, from Latin *meridies*, midday; hence the *noontide of life*.

Oral Exercises.

1. Describe Mr. Gladstone's qualifications as a debater.
2. Why is it, in Mr. Balfour's opinion, impossible for posterity to have a full idea of Mr. Gladstone's eloquence?

Composition.

Write an essay on “Eloquence.”

12.—THE TURCOMAN ROBBERS AND THEIR PRISONERS.

[Hajji Baba, a Persian, has been taken prisoner by Turcomans, and is forced to join them in an attack on a Persian town. The robbers begin to examine their prisoners and to count up their stolen gains. Hajji Baba tells the story of what happens.]

1. Our next care was to ascertain the value of our prisoners. One was a tall, thin man, about fifty years of age, with a sharp eye, a hollow aguish cheek, a scanty beard, wearing a pair of silken drawers and a shawl under-coat. The second was a short, round man, of middle age, with a florid face, dressed in a dark vest, buttoning over his breast, and looked like an officer of the law. The third was stout and hairy, of rough aspect, of a strong vigorous form, and was bound with more care than the others on account of the superior resistance which he had made.

2. After we had finished our meal, and distributed the remains of it to the prisoners, we called them before us, and questioned them as to their professions and situations in life. The tall, thin man, upon whose rich appearance the Turcomans founded their chief hope, was first examined, and as I was the only one of our party who could talk Persian, I stood interpreter.

3. "Who and what are you?" said Aslan Sultan. "I," said the prisoner, in a very subdued voice, "I beg to state, for the good of your service, that I am nothing—I am a poor man."

"What's your business?"

"I am a poet, at your service; what can I do more?"

4. "A poet!" cried one of the roughest of the Turcomans; "what is that good for?"

"Nothing," answered Aslan Sultan, in a rage; "he won't fetch ten tomauns; poets are always poor, and live upon what they can cozen from others. Who will ransom a poet? But if you are so poor," said Aslan Sultan, "how do you come by those rich clothes?"

5. "They are part of a dress of honour," returned the poet, "which was lately conferred upon me by the Prince of Shiraz, for having written some verses in his praise."

Upon which the clothes were taken from him, a sheep-skin cloak given to him in return, and he was dismissed for the present. Then came the short man. "Who are you?" said the chief; "what is your profession?"

"I am a poor cadi," answered the other.

6. "How came you to sleep in a fine bed, if you are poor?" said the interrogator. "You dog, if you lie, we'll take your head off! Confess that you are rich! All cadis are rich; they live by selling themselves to the highest bidder."

"I am the cadi of Galadoun, at your service," said the prisoner. "I was ordered to Ispahan by the governor to settle for the rent of a village which I occupy."

7. "Where is the money for your rent?" said Aslan.

humour with their excursion, and there was a great difference of opinion amongst them, as to what should be done with such worthless prisoners. Some were for keeping the cadi, and killing the poet and the ferash, and others for preserving the cadi for ransom, and making the ferash a slave; but all seemed to be for killing the poet.

13. I could not help feeling much compassion for this man, who in fact appeared to be from his manners and general deportment a man of consequence, although he had pleaded poverty; and seeing it likely to go very hard with him, I said, "What folly are you about to commit! Kill the poet! why it will be worse than killing the goose with the golden egg. Don't you know that poets are sometimes very rich, and can, if they choose, become rich at all times, for they carry their wealth in their head? Did you never hear of the king who gave a famous poet a misal of gold for every stanza which he composed? Is not the same thing said of the present Shah? and—who knows?—perhaps your prisoner may be the king's poet himself."

14. "Is that the case?" said one of the gang; "then let him make stanzas for us immediately, and if they don't fetch a misal each, he shall die."

"Make on! make on!" exclaimed the whole of them to the poet, elated by so bright a prospect of gain; "if you don't we'll cut your tongue out."

At length it was decided that all three should be preserved, and that as soon as they had made a division of the booty, we should return to the plains of Kipchak.

J. J. MORIER.

(From "*Hajji Baba of Ispahan*."")

a'gu-ish	in-ter'pre-ter	in-ter'ro-ga-tor
dis-trib'u-ted	coz'en	Is-pa-han'
sit-u-a'tions	Shi-raz'	mal-e-dic'tions

Par.	Par.
1. aguish, marked with effects of the ague.	4. tomaun, a Persian coin worth about ten shillings.
2. interpreter, one who translates what is said by one person to another who does not know the language used.	„ cozen, obtain by deceit.
	6. cadi, a judge or magistrate.
	„ interrogator, questioner.
	8. dinar, a small Persian coin.
	11. malediction, curse.

Derivations, etc.

Par.	
1. florid, from Latin <i>flos</i> (<i>flor-is</i>), a flower. Name other words from <i>flos</i> .	not, <i>medius</i> , the middle.
13. immediately, from Latin <i>in</i> ,	"Immediate" means that which comes next, without anything in between.

Oral Exercises.

1. Describe the appearance of the prisoners.
2. Describe the conversation with the prisoners.
3. What did the robber mean by saying that cadis sold themselves to the highest bidder?
4. What is meant by "*killing the goose with the golden egg*"?
5. How did Hajji Baba save the life of the poet?

Composition.

Write an essay on "The Benefits of Good Government."

"I came to say," answered the cadi, "that I had no money to give, for that the locusts had destroyed all my last year's crops, and that there had been a want of water."

"Then after all what is this fellow worth?" said one of the gang.

8. "He is worth a good price," replied the chief,



THE THREE PRISONERS BEFORE THE TURCOMAN ROBBERS.

"if he happens to be a good cadi, for then the peasants may wish him back again; but if not, a dinar is too much for him. We must keep him: perhaps he is of more value than a merchant would be. But let us see how much this other fellow is likely to fetch."

9. Then they brought the rough man before them, and Aslan Sultan questioned him in the usual manner—"What are you?"

"I am a ferash" (a carpet-spreader), said he, in a very sulky manner.

"A ferash!" cried out the whole gang — "a ferash! The fellow lies! How came you to sleep in a fine bed?" said one.

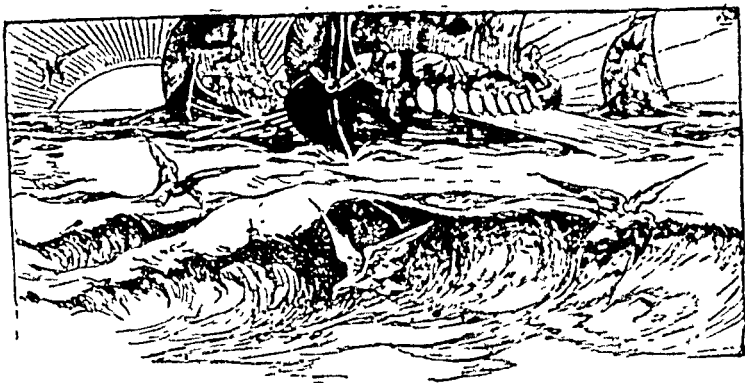
"It was not mine," he answered, "it was my master's."

"He lies! he lies!" they all cried out; "he is a merchant—you are a merchant. Own it, or we'll put you to death."

10. In vain he asserted that he was only a carpet-spreader, nobody believed him, and he received so many blows from different quarters, that at last he was obliged to roar out that he was a merchant.

11. But I, who judged from the appearance that he could not be a merchant, but that he was what he owned himself to be, assured my companions that they had got but a sorry prize in him, and advised them to release him; but immediately I was assailed in my turn with a thousand maledictions, and was told, that if I chose to take part with my countrymen, I should share their fate, and become a slave again—so I was obliged to keep my peace, and permit the ruffians to have their own way.

12. Their speculation in man-stealing having proved so unfortunate, they were in no very good



THE RETURN OF KING OLAF.

13.—KING OLAF'S FAILURE.

PART I.—THE CHALLENGE OF THOR.

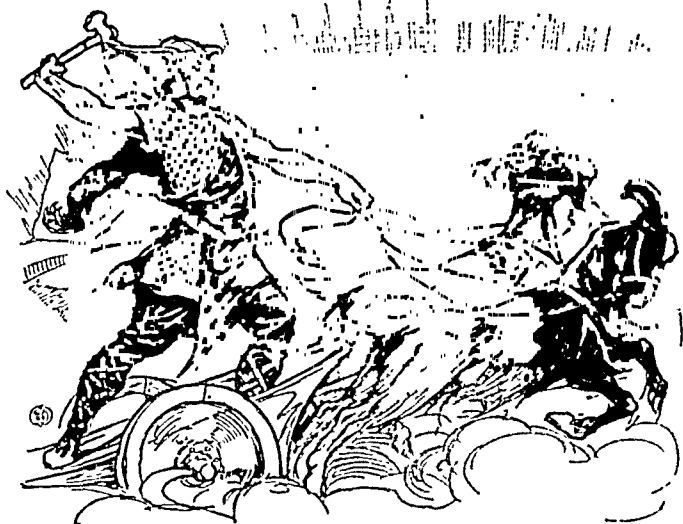
[Olaf, son of Trygve, King of Norway, had been driven from his country while yet a boy. He suffered many hardships and underwent many dangers, but in the end he returned and took possession of his kingdom. In his wanderings he had been converted to Christianity, and so zealous was he in the faith that he resolved to make Norway Christian, even if he had to use force to make men change their religion. In his poem "The Saga of King Olaf," Longfellow tells how the King fared.

As Olaf was sailing up Drontheim Fiord on his return, he thought that he heard Thor, the chief of the heathen gods, challenging Christ.]

1. I am the God Thor,
I am the War God,
I am the Thunderer!
Here in my Northland,
My fastness and fortress
Reign I forever!
2. Here amid icebergs
Rule I the nations;
This is my hammer,

Miölner, the mighty ;
Giants and sorcerers
Cannot withstand it !

3. These are the gauntlets
Wherewith I wield it,
And hurl it afar off.
This is my girdle ;
Whenever I brace it,
Strength is redoubled !
4. The light thou beholdest
Stream through the heavens,
In flashes of crimson,
Is but my red beard
Blown by the night-wind,
Affrighting the nations !
5. Jove is my brother ;
Mine eyes are the lightning ;
The wheels of my chariot
Roll in the thunder,
The blows of my hammer
Ring in the earthquake !
6. Force rules the world still,
Has ruled it, shall rule it ;
Meekness is weakness,
Strength is triumphant,
Over the whole earth
Still is it Thor's-day !



7. Thou art a God, too,
O Galilean!
And thus single-handed
Unto the combat,
Gauntlet or Gospel
Here I defy thee.
8. And King Olaf heard the cry,
Saw the red light in the sky,
Laid his hand upon his sword,
As he leaned upon the railing,
And his ships went sailing, sailing
Northward into Drontheim fiord.
9. There he stood as one who dreamed;
And the red light glanced and gleamed
On the armour that he wore.

And he shouted, as the rifted
Streamers o'er him shook and shifted,
"I accept thy challenge, Thor!"

10. To avenge his father slain,
And reconquer realm and
reign,
Came the youthful Olaf
home,
Through the midnight
sailing, sailing,
Listening to the wild
wind's wailing,
And the dashing of the
foam.

11. Thus came Olaf to his
own,
When upon the night-
wind blown
Passed that cry along
the shore;
And he answered, while
the rifted
Streamers o'er him shook and shifted,
"I accept thy challenge, Thor!"

HENRY WADSWORTH LONGFELLOW.

chal-len-ging

re-doub-led

Gal-i-le'an

Ver.

1. the God Thor, the god of
thunder, whose name is
still preserved in *Thursday*,
Thurso, and other words.

Ver.

4. the light thou beholdest
stream through the
heavens, the Aurora Bore-
alis or Northern light.



KING OLAF.

Ver.

8. Drontheim Fiord, otherwise Trondhjem Fjord, a harbour on the west coast of Norway.
9. rifted streamers, the flashes of the Aurora Borealis.

Ver.

9. "I accept thy challenge, Thor." King Olaf was ready to meet force with force.

Derivations, etc.

Ver.

3. gauntlets, from French *gant*, a glove, *let*, termination for diminutives. Other diminutives that have lost their diminutive force are *jacket*, *pocket*, *mallet*.
- „ girdle. What verb is connected with this?
7. defy, from Latin *de*, down, from, *fides*, faith (French *foi*). To defy was for a vassal

Ver.

- to cast off the faith which he owed to his lord. This was never done except when the vassal felt himself strong enough to fight his lord; so *defy* came to mean *challenge*. Name other words that have changed their meaning.
8. fiord or fjord. The Scottish geographical term *firth* is connected with this word.

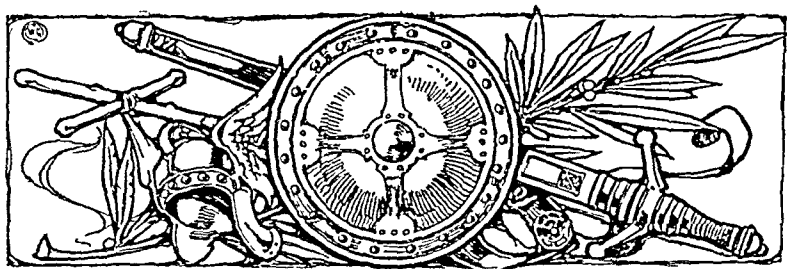
Oral Exercises.

1. Give the substance of Thor's challenge in your own words.
2. What is the meaning of "*Still is it Thor's day!*"?
3. Give examples of alliteration from the passages quoted.

Composition.

Write an essay on the saying of Thor, "Force rules the world still, has ruled it, shall rule it."





14.—KING OLAF'S FAILURE.

PART II.—THE NUN OF NIDAROS.

[For many years Olaf "preached the Gospel with his sword" and forced many of his subjects to call themselves Christians. At last, however, a great league was formed against him and he was slain in battle against the heathen among his own subjects, and the heathen kingdoms round him. After the battle, his mother Astrid, who had become a nun, heard a voice telling how great a mistake her son had made in supposing that the religion of Christ the Prince of Peace could be helped by the sword and force.]

1. In the convent of Drontheim

Alone in her chamber
Knelt Astrid the Abbess,
At midnight, adoring,
Beseeching, entreating,
The Virgin and Mother.

2. She heard in the silence

The voice of one speaking
Without in the darkness,
In gusts of the night-wind,
Now louder, now nearer,
Now lost in the distance.

3. The voice of a stranger
It seemed as she listened,
Of some one who answered,
Besecching, imploring,
A cry from afar off
She could not distinguish.



THE NUN OF NIDAROS.

4. The voice of Saint John,
The beloved disciple,
Who wandered and waited
The Master's appearance,
Alone in the darkness,
Unsheltered and friendless.
5. "It is accepted,
The angry defiance,

The challenge of battle!
It is accepted,
But not with the weapons
Of war that thou wieldest

6. "Cross against corslet,
Love against hatred,
Peace-cry for war-cry!
Patience is powerful;
He that o'ercometh
Hath power o'er the nations!
7. "As torrents in summer,
Half dried in their channels,
Suddenly rise, though the
Sky is still cloudless,
For rain has been falling
Far off at their fountains;
8. "So hearts that are fainting
Grow full to o'erflowing,
And they that behold it
Marvel, and know not
That God at their fountains
Far off has been raining!
9. "Stronger than steel
Is the sword of the Spirit;
Swifter than arrows
The light of the truth is;
Greater than anger
Is love, and subdueth!

10. "Thou art a phantom,
A shape of the sea-mist,
A shape of the brumal
Rain, and the darkness
Fearful and formless;
Day dawns and thou art not!

11. "The dawn is not distant,
Nor is the night starless;
Love is eternal!
God is still God, and
His faith shall not fail us;
Christ is Eternal!"

HENRY WADSWORTH LONGFELLOW.

dis-tin'-guish

weap'ons

bru'-mal

Ver.

6. peace-cry for war-cry, because
Christ's religion is not
founded on force.

Ver.

10. brumal, wintry.

Derivations, etc.

Ver.

1. beseeching, connected with
seek. Notice interchange of
k and *ch*.
4. disciple, from Lat. *disco*, I
learn.
6. corslet, from Lat. *corpus*, the
body.
7. torrents, from Lat. *torrens*,
boiling.

Ver.

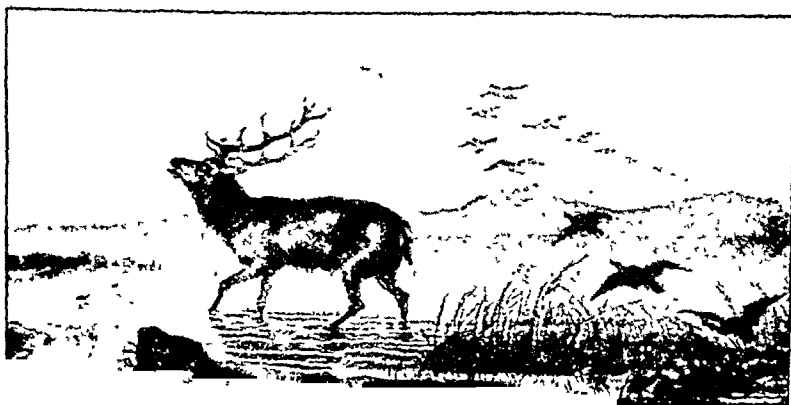
7. channels, from Lat. *canalis*,
a canal.
,, phantom, from Greek *phaino*,
I appear; an *appearance*
without reality.
,, brumal, from Lat. *bruma*,
winter.

Oral Exercises.

1. What error was made by Olaf?
2. Explain the phrase, "*Patience is powerful*."
3. Explain "*Day dawns and thou art not*."

Composition.

Write an Essay on "The Norsemen."



15.—THE ESCAPE ON THE MOOR.

[Alan Breck Stuart, a messenger from the Young Pretender to his adherents in the Highlands, and David Balfour, a young Lowlander, whom he had met, fell under unjust suspicion of murder. It was, or seemed to be, impossible for them to clear themselves, and they betook themselves to flight. The following passage tells how they were brought into near peril of capture through David's failure on watch, and how they at last escaped.]

PART I.

1. Toiling and resting and toiling again, we wore away the morning; and about noon lay down in a thick bush of heather to sleep. Alan took the first watch; and it seemed to me I had scarce closed my eyes before I was shaken up to take the second. We had no clock to go by; and Alan stuck a sprig of heath in the ground to serve instead; so that as soon as the shadow of the bush should fall so far to the east, I might know to rouse him.

2. But I was by this time so weary that I could have slept twelve hours at a stretch; I had the taste of sleep in my throat; my joints slept even

when my mind was waking; the hot smell of heather, and the drone of the wild bees, were like possets to me; and every now and again I would give a jump and find I had been dozing.

3. The last time I woke I seemed to come back from farther away, and thought the sun had taken a great start in the heavens. I looked at the sprig of heath, and at that I could have cried aloud: for I saw I had betrayed my trust. My head was nearly turned with fear and shame; and at what I saw, when I looked out around me on the moor, my heart was like dying in my body.

4. For sure enough, a body of horse-soldiers had come down during my sleep, and were drawing near to us from the south-east, spread out in the shape of a fan and riding their horses to and fro in the deep parts of the heather.

5. When I waked Alan, he glanced first at the soldiers, then at the mark and the position of the sun, and knitted his brows with a sudden, quick look, both ugly and anxious, which was all the reproach I had of him.

“What are we to do now?” I asked.

“We’ll have to play at being hares,” said he. “Do ye see yon mountain?” pointing to one on the north-eastern sky.

“Ay,” said I.

6. “Well then,” says he, “let us strike for that. Its name is Ben Alder; it is a wild, desert mountain full of hills and hollows, and if we can win to it before the morn, we may do yet.”

"But, Alan," cried I, "that will take us across the very coming of the soldiers!"

"I ken that fine," said he; "but if we are driven back on Appin, we are two dead men. So now, David man, be brisk!"

7. With that he began to run forward on his hands and knees with an incredible quickness, as though it were his natural way of going. All the time, too, he kept winding in and out in the lower parts of the moorland where we were the best concealed.

8. Some of these had been burned or at least scathed with fire; and there rose in our faces (which were close to the ground) a blinding, choking dust as fine as smoke. The water was long out; and this posture of running on the hands and knees brings an overmastering weakness and weariness, so that the joints ache and the wrists faint under your weight.

9. Now and then, indeed, where was a big bush of heather, we lay awhile, and panted,* and putting aside the leaves, looked back at the dragoons. They had not spied us, for they held straight on; a half-troop, I think, covering about two miles of ground, and beating it mighty thoroughly as they went.

10. I had awakened just in time; a little later, and we must have fled in front of them, instead of escaping on one side. Even as it was, the least misfortune might betray us; and now and again,

* See Frontispiece.

when a grouse rose out of the heather with a clap of wings, we lay as still as the dead and were afraid to breathe.

11. The aching and faintness of my body, the labouring of my heart, the soreness of my hands, and the smarting of my throat and eyes in the continual smoke of dust and ashes, had soon grown to be so unbearable that I would gladly have given up. Nothing but the fear of Alan lent me enough of a false kind of courage to continue. As for himself (and you are to bear in mind that he was cumbered with a great-coat), he had first turned crimson, but as time went on the redness began to be mingled with patches of white; his breath cried and whistled as it came; and his voice, when he whispered his observations in my ear during our halts, sounded like nothing human. Yet he seemed in no way dashed in spirits, nor did he at all abate in his activity; so that I was driven to marvel at the man's endurance.

R. L. STEVENSON.

(From "*Kidnapped*," by permission.)

pos'sets
in-cred'i-ble

post'ure
cum'bered

ob-ser-va'tions
ac-tiv-i-ty

Par.

2. possets, hot sweet drinks,
often given to induce sleep.

5. play at being hares, run
under cover of the heather,
as hares run under cover of
grass.

6. win to, reach.

„ Appin, the district between
Loch Creran and Loch

Par.

Linnhe, from which Alan
and David were trying to
escape.

7. incredible, that cannot be be-
lieved.

8. scathed, injured.

9. dragoons, originally mounted
infantry, now cavalry
soldiers.

each fresh step which I was sure would be my last, with despair—and of Alan, who was the cause of it, with hatred.

7. Alan was in the right trade as a soldier; this is the officer's part to make men continue to do things, they know not wherefore, and when, if the choice was offered, they would lie down where they were and be killed. And I dare say I would have made a good enough private; for in these last hours, it never occurred to me that I had any choice but just to obey as long as I was able, and die obeying.

8. Day began to come in, after years, I thought; and by that time we were past the greatest danger, and could walk upon our feet like men, instead of crawling like brutes. But, dear heart have mercy! what a pair we must have made, going double like old grandfathers, stumbling like babes, and as white as dead folk. Never a word passed between us; each set his mouth and kept his eyes in front of him, and lifted up his foot and set it down again, like people lifting weights at a country play; all the while, with the moorfowl crying "peep!" in the heather, and the light coming slowly clearer in the east.

9. I say Alan did as I did. Not that ever I looked at him, for I had enough ado to keep my feet; but because it is plain he must have been as stupid with weariness as myself, and looked as little where we were going, or we should not have walked into an ambush like blind men.

the strength that I want. If I could, I would; but as sure as I'm alive I cannot."

"Very well, then," said Alan. "I'll carry ye."

I looked to see if he were jesting; but no, the little man was in dead earnest; and the sight of so much resolution shamed me.

"Lead away!" said I. "I'll follow."

He gave me one look as much as to say, "Well done, David!" and off he set again at his top speed.

4. It grew cooler and even a little darker (but not much) with the coming of the night. The sky was cloudless; it was still early in July, and pretty far north; in the darkest part of that night you would have needed pretty good eyes to read, but for all that, I have often seen it darker in a winter mid-day.

5. Heavy dew fell and drenched the moor like rain; and this refreshed me for awhile. When we stopped to breathe, and I had time to see all about me, the clearness and sweetness of the night, the shapes of the hills like things asleep, and the fire dwindling away behind us like a bright spot in the midst of the moor, anger would come upon me in a clap that I must still drag myself in agony and eat the dust like a worm.

6. By what I have read in books. I think few that have held a pen were ever really wearied, or they would write of it more strongly. I had no care of my life, neither past nor future, and I scarce remembered there was such a lad as David Balfour; I did not think of myself, but just of

lay looking up in the face of the man that held me; and I mind his face was black with the sun and his eyes very light, but I was not afraid of him. I heard Alan and another whispering in the Gaelic; and what they said was all one to me.

12. Then the dirks were put up, our weapons were taken away, and we were set face to face, sitting in the heather.

"They are Cluny's men," said Alan. "We couldnae have fallen better. We're just to bide here with these, which are his out-sentries, till they can get word to the chief of my arrival."

R. L. STEVENSON.

(From "*Kidnapped*," by permission.)

res-o-lu'tion
jeop'ard

con-tin'ue
oc-curred'

am'bush
weap'ons

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>Par.
1. gloaming, Scots for twilight.
2. weary dragoons, not <i>tired</i> but <i>tiring</i> dragoons.
„ jeopard, endanger.
8. country-play, village fair.</p> | <p>Par.
11. mind his face, Scots for "remember his face."
12. Cluny, the chief of the Clan Macpherson.</p> |
|--|--|

Derivations, etc.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>Par.
1. gloaming, connected with <i>gloom</i>.
2. fowls, originally any kind of bird. Name words derived from <i>fowl</i> in which this meaning is still shown.</p> | <p>Par.
5. <i>drenched</i>, originally meant <i>made to drink</i>. A horse is said to be <i>drenched</i> when it is forced to take a draught of medicine.</p> |
|--|---|

Oral Exercises.

1. Why was Alan Breck fitted, in David's opinion, to be an officer?
2. Explain "*Like a fiddler and his wife*."

Composition.

Write, in your own words, a short account of the flight of David and Alan from the soldiers.

10. It fell in this way. We were going down a heathery brae, Alan leading and I following a pace or two behind, like a fiddler and his wife; when upon a sudden the heather gave a rustle, three or four ragged men leaped out, and the



ALAN AND DAVID.

next moment we were lying on our backs, each with a dirk at his throat.

11. I don't think I cared; the pain of this rough handling was quite swallowed up by the pains of which I was already full; and I was too glad to have stopped walking to mind about a dirk. I

that failed, they said you meant to subjugate Tirah. This filled every man's heart with hatred. We love our country, and we wish to keep it for ourselves.

3. "You don't really intend to occupy it, do you? Remember we are poor, ignorant hill folk, too ready to believe whatever we hear; and we hear it said so often. The Mullahs also said the Amir Sahib of Afghanistan would help us. He did not do so; but indirectly encouragement came from that country.

4. "When the Sarkar did me honour by sending me to negotiate I assembled a big 'jirgah' of my clan. There was an old Mullah present, but the first questions I had to answer referred to a letter that had been received from Afghanistan. You know, doubtless, the Amir Sahib is very anxious to have a powerful army. This is one of the reasons why I think our people would side with you in a struggle against him, for, besides being a tyrant in many other ways, he forces his subjects to serve in his army against their will.

5. "This letter, however, opened the Afghan army to us just as the Sarkar does the Indian army, except that where you offer ten rupees as monthly pay, the letter offered us twenty; where you give twenty, it would give us thirty; and so on. As I have said, we are very simple, and many of our younger men saw in these promises evidence of the Amir's desire to help us.



17.—MAKING PEACE WITH THE HILL TRIBES.

1. Between India and Afghanistan lies a tract of mountainous country inhabited by brave but troublesome tribes. Many of these people enlist in the Indian army, but this does not prevent the others from very frequently making war on the British. In the autumn of 1897 they made many attacks on British posts, and a large army marched through their country to punish them. It met with much resistance, but after some time the tribes began to submit. The Indian Government sent some of their countrymen who had been serving in the army to show them the folly of their conduct.

2. "I should have been considered little better than an infidel myself, sahib," said a young Afridi native officer, a member of the powerful Kambar Khel, "if the peasants had not had their fill of fighting. Why did they fight? Well, the Mullahs said they must for the Faith; and when

6. "I pointed out that help had been sought, and refused. Many had relations serving the Sarkar, and these I asked if they had ever heard of their friends' pay being so much as one month in arrears, though it might be only ten rupees as against twenty? Had they ever heard of a pension once earned being withdrawn without substantial reason? Better faithfully serve a faithful master.

7. "But my chief point was that the Sarkar gives every sepoy three months' furlough at stated intervals, and odd periods of leave besides, when he can be spared.

"With us, you know, sahib, it does not matter how hard the duty is, provided we can see our homes every two or three years; and there was no mention of any such condition.

8. "The letter having been disposed of, it was the old Mullah's turn. This was all worldly talk, he said. What did ten, fifteen, or twenty rupees matter, or a visit to one's wife and children? It was a case of serving for the Faith or against it. I had two arguments ready for him.

9. "'Thou preachest Ghaza,' I said, 'but in the holy books it is written that a man must die charging the infidel to reap the blessed reward of a death for the Faith; he must not go round, or back, but straight in the face of the foe. You,' I said, turning to the crowd, 'skulked behind rocks, shooting when you had the chance, and retiring before the Kafirs when you saw no



A JIRGAH OF THE HILL TRIBES.

"The fact was the peasants were not so willing to agree to every word that fell from the Mullah's lips as they had been, and after a little more talk, they decided to send in a 'jirgah' to Peshawur."

(Adapted by permission from the "Scotsman.")

in-fid-el	sub-stan'tial	Ko-ran'
peas-ants	se'-poy	cow'-ard-ice
sub'-ju-gate	fur-lough	pro-vis'ion
ne-go'ti-ate	ac-com'plished	ac-qui-es'cence

Par.

2. infidel, unbeliever. Here it means the Christians, who do not believe in Mohammed.
- „ Afridi (A-free'-dee), name of one of the largest of the hill tribes.
- „ Kambar Khel, one of the clans or subdivisions of the Afridis.
- „ mullahs, Mohammedan priests.
- „ the Faith, Islam or Mohammedanism.
- „ subjugate, conquer.
- „ Tirah, the Highland country near the Khyber Pass.
3. Amir Sahib (A-meer' Sa'-hib), his highness the Amir or ruler.

Par.

4. Sarkar (or *Sirkar*), the government.
- „ negotiate, to make a treaty.
- „ jirgah, meeting or deputation.
- „ rupee, an Indian coin now worth about 1s. 4d.
7. sepoy (or *sipahi*), a private soldier in the Indian army.
- „ furlough, leave of absence.
9. Ghaza, the duty of fighting against the infidel.
- „ Kafirs, Afghan name for unbelievers—the British.
10. Allah, Arabic name for God.
- „ Koran, the Holy Book of the Moslems.

Derivations, etc.

Par.

2. infidel, from Latin *in*, not, *fides*, faith.
4. negotiate, from Latin *negotium*, a thing.

Par.

4. tyrant, from Greek *tyrannos*, an illegal ruler, and hence an unjust and cruel ruler.

Oral Exercises.

1. Where do the Afridis live?
2. Tell in your own words the proposal made by the Amir.
3. Describe the two arguments used by the Mullah, and the young officer's replies.

Composition.

Write an essay on "The Indian Empire."

certainly of success. Your Ghaza was not accomplished.'

10. "I thanked Allah then that my parents had compelled me to learn Arabic, though in my youth it was sorely against my will. Otherwise, I could not have known the contents of the Holy Koran beyond what the Mullahs chose to explain.

11. "The Mullah was prepared with an answer.

"'That was written,' he said, 'before rifles were made. Thou readest the words indeed, but not their meaning. The Prophet (the peace of God be upon him) meant that a man must show no trace of cowardice. Is it cowardice to take full advantage of the good weapons Allah has been pleased to bestow on us? Not to do so were the work of a child.'

12. "This retort met with a good deal of approval, so I fell back on my second argument.

"'It is the wont of thy profession,' I replied, 'to say the Holy Koran means this, that, or the other. A plain meaning for plain words is more to my liking. But let that pass. It is also written, that he shall not go forth who has wife and children depending on him. He must first make provision for their welfare after his death. Otherwise his Ghaza is not accomplished, and he reaps no reward. Perchance, thou canst twist these blessed words also?'

13. "The Mullah said nothing, for a hum of decided acquiescence went round the circle, but he looked ready to slay me had he dared.

He ranged his soldiers for the fight,
Accoutred thus in open sight
Of either host.

Three bowshots far,
Paused the deep front of England's war, 20
And rested on their arms awhile,
To close and rank their warlike file,
And hold high council, if that night
Should view the strife, or dawning light.

O gay, yet fearful to behold, 25
Flashing with steel and rough with gold,
And bristled o'er with bills and spears,
With plumes and pennons waving fair,
Was that bright battle-front! for there
Rode England's King and peers: 30
And who, that saw that monarch ride,
His kingdom battled by his side,
Could then his direful doom foretell!—
Fair was his seat in knightly selle,
And in his sprightly eye was set 35
Some spark of the Plantagenet.
Though light and wandering was his glance,
It flash'd at sight of shield and lance.
“Know'st thou,” he said, “De Argentine,
Yon knight who marshals thus their 40
line?”—

“The tokens on his helmet tell
The Bruce, my Liege: I know him well.”
“And shall the audacious traitor brave
The presence where our banners wave?”—



18.—THE DEATH OF DE BOUNE.

[The following extract describes the well-known attack on Robert Bruce the evening before the Battle of Bannockburn.]

The Monarch rode along the van,
The foe's approaching force to scan,
His line to marshal and to range,
And ranks to square, and fronts to change.
Alone he rode—from head to heel 5
Sheathed in his ready arms of steel;
Nor mounted yet on war-horse wight,
But, till more near the shock of fight,
Reining a palfrey low and light.
A diadem of gold was set 10
Above his bright steel basinet,
And clasp'd within its glittering twine
Was seen the glove of Argentine.
Truncheon or leading staff he lacks,
Bearing, instead, a battle-axe. 15

High in his stirrups stood the King, 75
And gave his battle-axe the swing.
Right on De Boune, the whiles he pass'd,
Fell that stern dint—the first—the last;—



Such strength upon the blow was put,
The helmet crash'd like hazel-nut; 80
The axe-shaft, with its brazen clasp,
Was shiver'd to the gauntlet grasp.
Springs from the blow the startled horse,
Drops to the plain the lifeless corse;
—First of that fatal field, how soon, 85
How sudden, fell the fierce De Boune!

SIR WALTER SCOTT.

(From "The Lord of the Isles.")

“So please my Liege,” said Argentine, 45
“Were he but horsed on steed like mine,
To give him fair and knightly chance,
I would adventure forth my lance.”—
“In battle-day,” the King replied,
“Nice tourney rules are set aside. 50
—Still must the rebel dare our wrath?
Set on him—sweep him from our path!”
And, at King Edward’s signal, soon
Dash’d from the ranks Sir Henry Boune.

Of Hereford’s high blood he came, 55
A race renown’d for knightly fame.
He burn’d before his Monarch’s eye
To do some deed of chivalry.
He spurr’d his steed, he couch’d his lance,
And darted on the Bruce at once. 60
—As motionless as rocks, that bide
The wrath of the advancing tide,
The Bruce stood fast.—Each breast beat high,
And dazzled was each gazing eye.—
The heart had hardly time to think, 65
The eyelid scarce had time to wink,
While on the King, like flash of flame,
Spurr’d to full speed the war-horse came!
The partridge may the falcon mock,
If that slight palfrey stand the shock— 70
But, swerving from the Knight’s career,
Just as they met, Bruce shunn’d the spear.
Onward the baffled warrior bore
His course—but soon his course was o’er!—

Guests in rich and various costumes sat beneath a leafy canopy of fresh-cut branches fastened tastefully to golden, silver, and blue silken cords that traversed the area; and fruits, of many hues, including some artificial ones of gold, silver, and wax, hung pendent, or peeped like fair eyes among the green leaves of plane-trees and lime-trees.

2. The Duke's minstrels swept their lutes at intervals, and a fountain played red Burgundy in six jets that met and battled in the air. The evening sun darted its fires through those bright and purple wine spouts, making them jets and cascades of molten rubies, then passing on, tinged with the blood of the grape, shed crimson glories here and there on fair faces, snowy beards, velvet, satin, jewelled hilts, glowing gold, gleaming silver, and sparkling glass.

3. Gerard and his friends stood dazzled, spell-bound. Presently a whisper buzzed round them, "Salute the Duke! Salute the Duke!" They looked up, and there on high, under the daïs, was their sovereign, bidding them welcome with a kindly wave of the hand. The men bowed low, and Margaret curtsied with a deep and graceful obeisance.

4. The Duke's hand being up, he gave it another turn, and pointed the new-comers out to a knot of valets. Instantly seven of his people, with an obedient start, went headlong at our friends, seated them at a table, and put fifteen many-

ap-proach'ing
pal-frey
di-a-dem
bas'i-net

Ar'gen-tine
trunch'eon
ac-cou'tred
coun-cil

selle
Plan-ta'gen-et
tour'ney
chiv'al-ry

Line

1. van, the front part of the army.
9. palfrey, a pony or small horse.

Line

11. basinet, helmet.
17. accoutred, equipped.
31. battled, set in order of battle.
33. selle, seat on horseback.

Derivations, etc.

Line

9. palfrey, from old French *pale-frei*, a horse.
10. diadem, from Greek, *dia*, through, *deo*, I bind.
11. basinet, from French *bacin* or *bassin*, a basin, so called from its shape.

Line

29. peers, from Latin *par*, equal.
49. tourney, from old French *tournoyer*, to turn round about; so called because the combatants *turned* at the end of the lists.

Oral Exercises.

1. Describe the equipment of Bruce.
2. Describe the English army.
3. Give in your own words Scott's account of the fall of De Boune.

Composition.

Write an essay on "War."



19.—THE DUKE OF BURGUNDY'S FEAST AT ROTTERDAM.

[This passage describes the feast which the Duke of Burgundy gave to artists and others whom he invited to compete for prizes at a grand festival at Rotterdam. Gerard Eliassoen, one of the competitors, was accompanied to the feast by an old man named Peter, and by the latter's daughter Margaret.]

1. The courtyard was laid out in tables loaded with rich meats and piled with gorgeous plate.



THE DUKE OF BURGUNDY'S FEAST.

coloured soups before them, in little silver bowls, and as many wines in crystal vases.

5. The soup was tasted, and vanished in a twirl of fourteen hands, and fish came on the table in a dozen forms, with patties of lobster and almonds mixed, and of almonds and cream, and an immense variety of *brouets* known to us as *rissoles*. The next trifle was a wild boar, which smelt divine. Why, then, did Margaret start away from it with two shrieks of dismay, and pinch Gerard? Because the Duke's *cuisinier* had been too clever; had made this excellent dish too captivating to the sight as well as taste.

6. He had restored to the animal, by elaborate mimicry with burnt sugar and other edible colours, the hair and bristles he had robbed him of by fire and water. To make him still more enticing, the huge tusks were carefully preserved in the brute's jaw, and gave his mouth the winning smile that comes of tusk in man or beast; and two eyes of coloured sugar glowed in his head. St. Argus! what eyes! so bright, so blood-shot, so threatening—they followed a man and every movement of his knife and spoon.

7. But, indeed, I need the pencil of Granville or Tenniel to make you see the two gilt valets on the opposite side of the table putting the monster down before our friends, with a smiling, self-satisfied, benevolent obsequiousness—for this ghastly monster was the flower of all comestibles—old Peter clasping both hands in pious admira-

to the life; elephants, camels, toads; knights on horseback jousting; kings and princesses looking on; trumpeters blowing; and all these personages delicious eating, and their veins filled with sweet-scented juices; works of art made to be destroyed.

11. The guests breached a bastion, crunched a crusader and his horse and lance, or cracked a bishop, cope, chasuble, crosier and all, as remorselessly as we do a caraway comfit; sipping meanwhile hippocras and other spiced drinks, and Greek and Corsican wines, while every now and then little Turkish boys, turbaned, spangled, jewelled, and gilt, came offering on bended knee golden troughs of rosewater and orange-water to keep the guests' hands cool and perfumed.

CHARLES READE.

(From the "Cloister and the Hearth," by permission of Messrs. Chatto & Windus.)

can'o-py	o-bei'sance	ven'i-son
trav'ersed	ex'cel-lent	cyg'net
ar-ti-fi'cial	ben-ev'o-lent	mor-ose'
pend'ent	ob-se'qui-ous-ness	con-fec'tion-er-y
cas-cades'	com-est'i-bles	in-ter'sti-ces
da'is	char'it-able	chas'u-ble

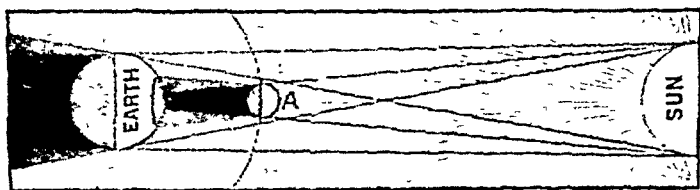
- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>Par.</p> <p>2. the Duke, Philip the Good, Duke of Burgundy, 1419-1467. He ruled Rotterdam as Count of Holland.</p> <p>„ Burgundy, wine from Burgundy.</p> <p>3. dais, a raised platform at the end of the hall.</p> <p>5. patties, small pies.</p> | <p>Par.</p> <p>5. rissoles, fish or meat, minced, mixed with breadcrumbs and eggs, and enclosed in paste.</p> <p>„ cuisinier (pronounced kwee-see-ni-eh), French word meaning cook.</p> <p>6. St. Argus. No saint of this name was ever recognised</p> |
|---|--|

tion of it; Margaret wheeling round with horror-stricken eyes; Gerard's face of unwise delight; the grizzly brute glaring sulkily on all, and the guests grinning from ear to ear.

8. "What's to do?" shouted the Duke, hearing the signals of female distress. Seven of his people with a zealous start went headlong and told him. He laughed and said, "Give her of the beef-stuffing, then, and bring me Sir Boar." Benevolent monarch! The beef-stuffing was his own private dish. On these grand occasions an ox was roasted whole, and reserved for the poor. But this wise as well as charitable prince had discovered, that whatever venison, hares, lamb, poultry, &c., you skewered into that beef cavern, got cooked to perfection, retaining their own juices and receiving those of the reeking ox.

9. These he called his beef-stuffing, and took delight therein, as did now our trio; for, at his word, seven of his people went headlong, and drove silver tridents into the steaming cave at random, and speared a kid, a cygnet, and a flock of wildfowl. These presently smoked before Gerard and company; and Peter's face, sad and slightly morose at the loss of the savage hog, expanded and shone.

10. After this, twenty different tarts of fruits and herbs, and last of all, confectionery on a Titanic scale; cathedrals of sugar, all gilt and painted in the interstices of the bas-reliefs; castles with their moats and ditches imitated



THE THEORY OF AN ECLIPSE OF THE SUN.

20.—A TOTAL ECLIPSE OF THE SUN

PART I.

1. For many a long day astronomers had looked forward with special interest to that total eclipse of the sun which was to happen in the autumn of 1896. This was the case even though from some points of view it was not a particularly favourable phenomenon of the kind. The duration of totality—the only phase, be it observed, which is of much importance for the advancement of science—was in this case but a short one. At no spot on the earth could it last longer than two minutes and a half.

2. This is a briefer interval than has not unfrequently been available in some other eclipses. Those moments, so precious to astronomers, have occasionally mounted up to a period more than double as long. The great merit of this particular total eclipse lay in the fact that it offered good sites for observation much nearer home. Granting only the necessary weather conditions, it could be seen in western Europe.

3. The eclipse track across continent and ocean

- Par. Argus was the name of a fabled hero of the Greeks who had one hundred eyes. He is here humorously called a saint.
7. Granville and Tenniel, illustrators of *Punch*.
 „ comestibles, articles of food.
 9. tridents, three-pronged forks.
 „ cygnet, young swan.
 „ Titanic, gigantic. The Titans were giants who warred with the gods.

- Par. 10. bas-reliefs, slightly raised sculpture.
 „ jousting, contending in a tournament.
 11. bastion, projecting angle of a fortification.
 „ cope, a sleeveless, hooded cloak, worn by priests.
 „ chasuble, a priest's outer vestment.
 „ crosier, a bishop's crossheaded staff.

Derivations, etc.

- Par. 1. courtyard, double word, each part having the same meaning; from Latin *cors* (*cortis*), a yard, and Anglo-Saxon *geard*, a yard. Name another word in modern English from *geard*.
 „ costumes, from French *cos tume*, custom, usual dress, and then any dress.
 „ canopy, from Greek *cônops*, a gnat, a mosquito curtain; hence any covering; hence a cover held over the head.
 3. salute, from Latin *salus*

- Par. (salut-is), safety; originally to wish safety to, to say "God save you."
 3. obeisance, from Latin *obedio*, I obey, through French *obéir*.
 8. venison, from Latin *venatio*, hunting.
 10. Titanic, from the *Titans*, fabled giants of Greek story. Mention words derived from the names of Hercules, Mercury, and other fictitious persons.

Oral Exercises.

1. Describe in your own words the appearance of the courtyard.
2. Explain "went headlong at our friends."
3. Why was the boar removed?
4. Describe the "beef-stuffing."
5. In what various shapes was the confectionery made?

Composition.

Write a letter or essay describing any public festival or merry-making that you have seen.

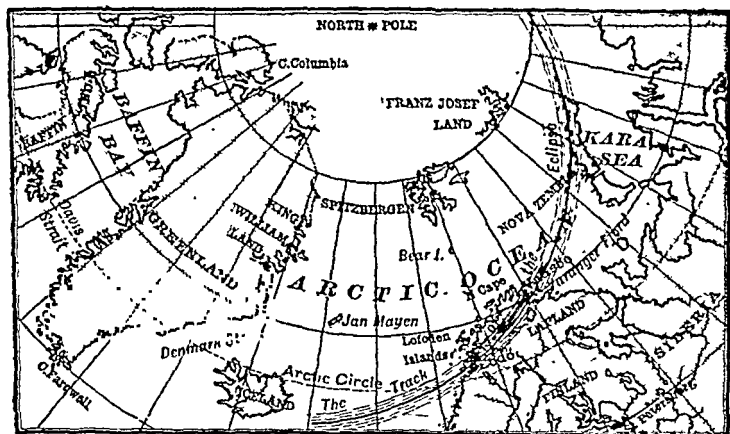
As the weather actually turned out, our choice was certainly an unfortunate one. Had we only been content with going so far as Bodö, we should have fared well; as it was, we illustrated the unhappiness of going farther and faring worse.

6. With a full ship we left Tilbury on July 25th, and reached Stavanger after a moderately good crossing of that North Sea which often has such terrors for those who dread the waves. As the *Norse King* proceeded on her course towards the North Cape, the gradual lengthening of the day and the gradual banishment of the night was an experience of much interest to many of us.

7. The desolate coast-line, broken by mountains of remarkable grandeur, the extraordinary cloud effects, the presence of great ice-sheets, from whence glaciers descended nearly to the sea level; the numerous eider ducks and other birds, with which we were unfamiliar at home, clearly showed how rapidly we were advancing through the northern latitudes. After the North Cape was passed, we took an easterly course, and on the night of Sunday, 2nd of August, at the end of a beautiful voyage, we reached Vadsöe, in the Varanger Fjord.

8. Early on Monday morning, Dr. Common and I called on Governor Prebenson, who resides at Vadsöe, as being the most central position in the extensive territory of Finmarken, over which his rule extends. He at once offered us every facility: he pointed out the moor which ascends

formed a belt nearly one hundred miles wide. From its origin in the North Sea it entered Norway at Bodö, swept over the mountains and snowfields of the interior, and quitted Scandinavia again at Vadsöe, on the eastern coast. There the eclipse shadow was calculated to take to the sea again, and after traversing a waste of Arctic



ECLIPSE TRACK.

waters, was to arrive at Nova Zembla, cross that dreary country, and speed for thousands of miles to the east.

4. It thus appeared that the possible places of observation at our end of the line of shadow were reduced to three. There was Bodö on this side of Norway, there was Vadsöe on the other side, and there was the western coast of Nova Zembla.

5. Vadsöe was finally chosen as the station to be occupied by the Government observing party.

Par.

3. Bodo, at the mouth of Salten Fjord, on the west coast of Norway.
- „ Vadsoe, on Varanger Fjord, on the north coast of Norway.

Par.

6. Stavanger, seaport on the west coast of Norway.
8. showed us gracious hospitality, received us most kindly as guests.

Derivations, etc.

Par.

1. eclipse, from Greek *ec*, out, *lipsein*, to leave.
6. banishment, from old English, *bann*, a proclamation; because culprits were sent into

Par.

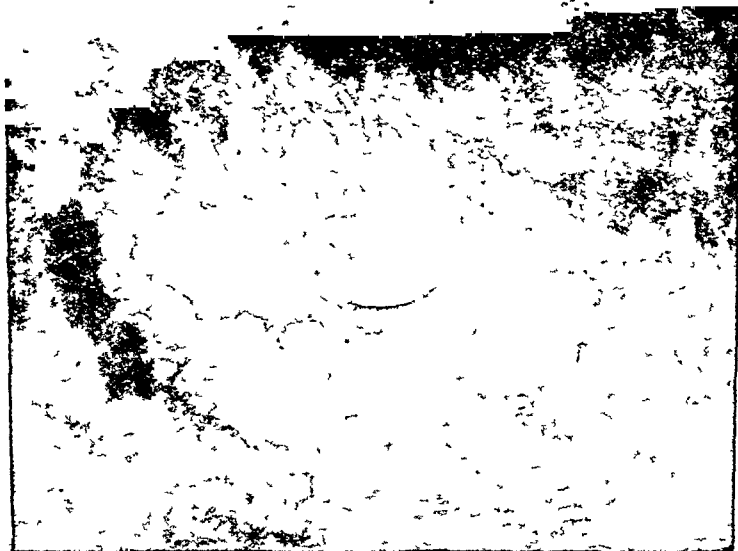
- exile or banishment, by a proclamation.
7. glaciers, from French *glace*, ice.

Oral Exercises.

1. Why was the total eclipse of 1896 not very favourable for observers?
2. Describe the course of the eclipse track.

Composition.

Write an essay on "Winter."



AN ECLIPSE—THE MOON MOVING ACROSS THE FACE OF THE SUN.

northwards from the little town, and gave us liberty to choose on it whatever site we liked. On this, as on subsequent occasions, he and his family showed us gracious hospitality, the recollection of which we shall cherish as among the most pleasant incidents of our trip to the Arctic regions.

9. It was naturally very interesting for us to hear how daily life was conducted under conditions so very different from those which prevail in our latitudes. A summer of continuous daylight we saw and experienced, and so we asked about winter. What, for example, was Christmas Day like at Vadsöe?

10. Our hosts explained that if the weather was good on Christmas Day, it would be possible for one sitting at the window to read a book by daylight for about twenty minutes at noon, but that reading without artificial light would be impossible at any other period of the twenty-four hours.

SIR ROBERT BALL.

(Adapted by permission from the "Strand Magazine.")

as-tron'-o-mers
phen-om'-en-on

to-tal'i-ty
fa-cil'i-ty

hos-pi-tal'i-ty
ar-ti-fi-cial

Par.

1. eclipse of the sun, the hiding of the sun by the moon coming between it and the earth; the shadow cast on the earth by the moon.

„ phenomenon, an appearance, something observed.

„ totality, the time during which the sun is *completely*

Par.

hidden by the moon. The partial darkening, or *penumbra*, lasts much longer.

3. the eclipse track, the portion of the earth over which the shadow of the moon passes.

„ its origin, where the shadow first falls on the earth.

the whole period of six days was not found a moment too long for bringing to completion all the necessary arrangements. This will be admitted when we learn that, on this occasion, Dr. Common for the first time employed in eclipse work the new and beautiful instrument known as the Cœlostæt, by which the effect of the apparent movement of the heavens is neutralised in a very ingenious manner.

5. As the last day of preparation drew to a close all had been got into readiness, and everything depended on what the weather might be like on the early Sunday morning of August 9th, 1896. I do not think anyone had much sleep the previous night. Several other ships were arriving, until the little port of Vadsøe was crowded as it had never been crowded before.

6. A number of bluejackets from the British men-of-war had been placed at the disposal of Dr. Common. They were told off to guard the margin of our camp. Around the fence which bounded it the Arctic inhabitants collected in clusters, watching with breathless interest the unusual preparations of the astronomers.

7. I was personally engaged in observing, or more often trying to observe, with a small equatorial telescope. It is a beautiful instrument, which has been presented to the Cambridge Observatory by Professor Adams, my illustrious predecessor in the Lowndean Chair.

the whole period of six days was not found a moment too long for bringing to completion all the necessary arrangements. This will be admitted when we learn that, on this occasion, Dr. Common for the first time employed in eclipse work the new and beautiful instrument known as the Cœlostæt, by which the effect of the apparent movement of the heavens is neutralised in a very ingenious manner.

5. As the last day of preparation drew to a close all had been got into readiness, and everything depended on what the weather might be like on the early Sunday morning of August 9th, 1896. I do not think anyone had much sleep the previous night. Several other ships were arriving, until the little port of Vadsøe was crowded as it had never been crowded before.

6. A number of bluejackets from the British men-of-war had been placed at the disposal of Dr. Common. They were told off to guard the margin of our camp. Around the fence which bounded it the Arctic inhabitants collected in clusters, watching with breathless interest the unusual preparations of the astronomers.

7. I was personally engaged in observing, or more often trying to observe, with a small equatorial telescope. It is a beautiful instrument, which has been presented to the Cambridge Observatory by Professor Adams, my illustrious predecessor in the Lowndean Chair.

21.—A TOTAL ECLIPSE OF THE SUN.

PART II.

1. It would appear that among the winter diversions of Vadsøe is the sport of tobogganing, and the wooden erection which forms the commencement of the slide is a conspicuous object on the moor. It was immediately to the east of this structure, a little more than a mile distant from the pier, that Dr. Common decided to plant the observatory of the Government eclipse-party.

2. A few hours of energetic work sufficed to transport the various boxes of instruments to the camp, and then the work of erection was at once commenced. There were many hands to help, and there was much to be done. The bushes had to be cleared away, the ground had to be fenced in, stones had to be collected for the foundations, and the wooden huts had to be reared.

3. The cases had then to be opened. Great instruments of much delicacy had to be lifted out, put together, and adjusted, and a photographic room had to be prepared. Provision had to be made for protecting the instruments from rain, but the traditional honesty and good behaviour of the Norwegians rendered it little more than a matter of form to observe any other precautions.

4. Although there was plenty of assistance, yet

moment of totality was reached. Our hopes and fears alternated during this interval.

10. These hopes were not to be realised. During the great phase of totality a dense curtain of clouds hid the sun and moon from our view. Of the eclipse in the heavens nothing could be seen. All that could be done was to note its effects upon the earth. Such effects were so grand and impressive, that those who beheld them felt amply repaid for having travelled all the way to Vadsöe.

11. Just as the last thin crescent of sun was on the point of disappearing, the great shadow of the moon was observed sweeping down from the distant mountains plunging the fjord into solemn darkness, and then as the shadow advanced with the speed of a cannon-ball we found ourselves overwhelmed with the only night we had experienced during that Arctic summer. An impressive silence brooded over the many spectators during those 106 seconds, at the close of which the restoration of daylight took place with a suddenness almost startling. The total eclipse of 9th August 1896 was at an end.

SIR ROBERT BALL.

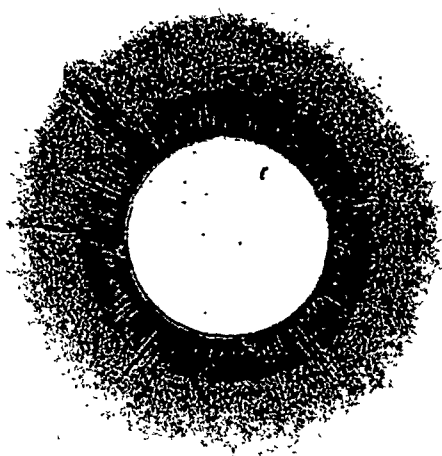
(Adapted by permission from the "Strand Magazine.")

di-ver'sions
to-bog'gan-ing
con-spic'u-ous
en-er-get'ic

del'i-ca-cy
tra-di'tion-al
neu-tra-lised'
e-qua-to'ri-al

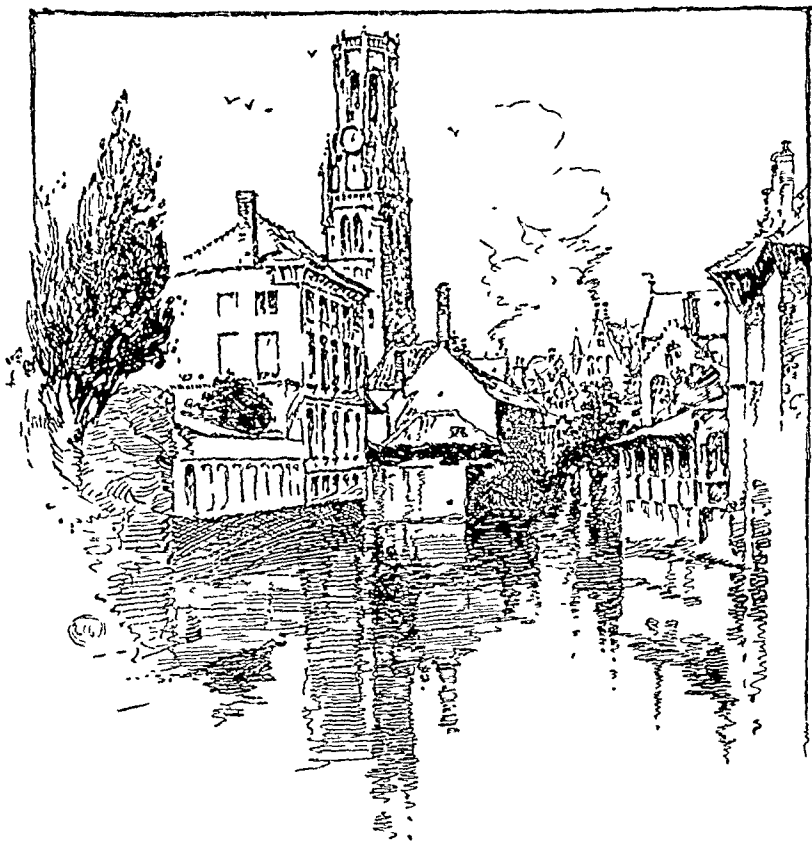
il-lus'tri-ous
pre-de-ces-sor
lu'min-ar-y
cres-cent

8. But on this occasion its excellent qualities were of but little avail, the heavens were so greatly overcast. The introductory phenomenon of first contact could not be seen, the sun was behind a cloud at the moment when the moon made its invasion of the brilliant surface.



A TOTAL ECLIPSE OF THE SUN.

9. From where I was stationed the sky soon afterwards brightened a little, and the orb of day came forth brilliantly, showing that the phenomenon had commenced and that the moon had by that time effected a distinct encroachment upon the bright margin of the luminary. Nearly an hour had yet to elapse before the supreme



22.—THE BELFRY OF BRUGES.

1. In the market-place of Bruges stands the belfry old and brown :

Thrice consumed and thrice rebuild'd, still it
watches o'er the town.

2. As the summer morn was breaking, on that
lofty tower I stood,

And the world threw off the darkness, like
the weeds of widowhood.

Par.

1. tobogganing, sliding on wooden frames down snow slopes.
3. delicacy, fine adjustment.
- „ traditional, well known, and frequently described.
4. apparent movement. The sky, with sun, moon, and stars, appears to turn from east to west. In reality the earth turns from west to east.
- „ is neutralised, has its effect destroyed.

Par.

7. equatorial telescope, telescope so mounted that it can be used to observe any part of the heavens.
7. Adams, an eminent astronomer, one of the two discoverers of the planet Neptune; a Frenchman, Leverrier, being the other.
- „ predecessor, one who goes before.
9. margin, edge or border.
- „ supreme, most important.
- „ alternated, came turn about.

Derivations, etc.

Par.

4. Cœlostæt, from Latin *cœlum*, heaven, *sto* (*statum*), I stand.

Par.

9. encroachment, from French *en*, in, *croc*, a hook.
- „ elapse, from Latin *e*, out of, *labor* (*lapsus*), I slip.

Oral Exercises.

1. What is the special function of the Cœlostæt?
2. Describe the preparations for observing the eclipse.
3. Describe the eclipse as it was seen at Vadsoe.

Composition.

Write an essay on "The Sky."

-
11. I beheld the pageants splendid, that adorned
those days of old;
Stately dames, like queens attended, knights
who bore the Fleece of Gold.
12. Lombard and Venetian merchants with deep-
laden argosies;
Ministers from twenty nations; more than
royal pomp and ease.
13. I beheld proud Maximilian, kneeling humbly
on the ground;
I beheld the gentle Mary, hunting with her
hawk and hound.
14. I beheld the Flemish weavers, with Namur
and Juliers bold,
Marching homeward from the bloody battle of
the Spurs of Gold,
15. Saw the fight at Minnewater, saw the White
Hoods moving west,
Saw great Artevelde victorious scale the
Golden Dragon's nest!
16. And again the whiskered Spaniard all the
land with terror smote;
And again the wild alarum sounded from the
tocsin's throat;
17. Till the bell of Ghent responded o'er lagoon
and dyke of sand,
"I am Roland! I am Roland! there is victory
in the land!"
18. Then the sound of drums aroused me. The
awakened city's roar
Chased the phantoms I had summoned back
into their graves once more.

3. Thick with towns and hamlets studded, and
with streams and vapours grey,
Like a shield embossed with silver, round and
vast the landscape lay.
4. At my feet the city slumbered. From its
chimneys here and there,
Wreaths of snow-white smoke, ascending,
vanished, ghost-like into air.
5. Not a sound rose from the city at the early
morning hour,
But I heard a heart of iron beating in the
ancient tower.
6. From their nests beneath the rafters sang the
swallows wild and high ;
And the world, beneath me sleeping, seemed
more distant than the sky.
7. Then most musical and solemn, bringing back
the olden times,
With their strange, unearthly changes rang
the melancholy chimes.
8. Like the psalms from some old cloister, when
the nuns sing in the choir ;
And the great bell tolled among them, like the
chanting of a friar.
9. Visions of the days departed, shadowy phan-
toms filled my brain,
They who live in history only seemed to walk
the earth again ;
10. All the Foresters of Flanders, mighty Baldwin
Bras de Fer,
Lyderick du Bucq and Cressy, Philip, Guy de
Dampierre.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>Ver.</p> <p><i>beseech</i> with <i>seek</i>. Give other examples of words similarly connected. (See next verse.)</p> <p>2. weeds, originally clothes of any kind.</p> <p>3. hamlets, connected with <i>home</i>. Give geographical names in which the first syllable of this word is used as a termination.</p> <p>„ landscape, from Dutch <i>landscap</i>; termination the same as <i>ship</i> in English words like <i>friendship</i>, <i>kingship</i>.</p> <p>7. musical, from Greek <i>mousai</i>, Latin <i>musae</i>, the goddesses of history, tragedy, dancing, etc. Hence music meant anything pertaining to these, and hence the special science and art connected with singing and instrumental melody.</p> <p>8. cloister, from Latin <i>claudo</i>, I close; a closed place, a convent or part of one.</p> | <p>Ver.</p> <p>8. psalm, from Greek <i>psallo</i>, I sing.</p> <p>„ friar, from French <i>frère</i> (Latin <i>frater</i>), a brother.</p> <p>11. pageants, from old English <i>pagen</i>, a wooden stage for popular shows; (Latin <i>pango</i>, I fix.) Hence <i>any kind of show</i>; hence a <i>grand or gorgeous sight</i>.</p> <p>12. argosies, said by some to be from the name (<i>Argo</i>) of a fabulous Grecian ship; by others to be a corruption of <i>Ragosy</i>, meaning a <i>ship of Ragusa</i>, a port on the east of the Adriatic.</p> <p>„ pomp, from Greek <i>pompē</i>, a religious procession, hence anything magnificent.</p> <p>13. hound, a <i>hunting</i> dog.</p> <p>17. lagoon, from Spanish <i>laguna</i>, a pool or lake (Lat. <i>lacus</i>, a lake, <i>lacuna</i>, a space).</p> <p>„ dyke, connected with <i>dig</i>, and <i>ditch</i>. (See note on watches, in verse 1.)</p> |
|---|---|

Oral Exercises.

1. Describe the view from the Belfry of Bruges.
2. What did the poet think of as he looked from the Belfry?

Composition.

Write an essay on "A View from a Height."

19. Hours had passed away like minutes; and,
 before I was aware,
 Lo! the shadow of the belfry crossed the sun-
 illumined square.

HENRY WADSWORTH LONGFELLOW.

va'pours
 an'cient
 mel'an-cho-ly

clois'ter
 pa'geants
 ar'go-sies

toc'sin
 phan'toms
 il-lu'mined

Ver.

1. Bruges, a famous old town in Flanders.
3. embossed, ornamented with raised work.
5. heart of iron, the bell.
10. Foresters of Flanders. The first rulers of Flanders were called Foresters. Afterwards they were termed Counts. The names that follow are those of some of the Foresters and Counts.
11. pageants, great ceremonies.
- „ Fleece of Gold, the name of the chief Burgundian Order of Knighthood. Bruges with the rest of Flanders at one time belonged to the Dukes of Burgundy.
12. argosies, great ships.
13. Maximilian, one of the Emperors, who was taken prisoner by the people of Bruges, and not released until he had sworn on his knees to take no vengeance for their rebellion.
- „ Mary, the heiress of Charles the Bold of Burgundy. She

Ver.

- married Maximilian and brought him most of her father's wide dominions.
14. battle of the Spurs of Gold, fought in 1302, between the Flemings and the French. The French were defeated, and so many of the golden spurs worn by knights were found on the field that the battle got its name from them.
15. the fight at Minnewater, in which the citizens of Bruges were defeated by those of Ghent.
- „ Artevelde, Philip van Artevelde took the Golden Dragon, the chief ornament of Bruges Cathedral, to Ghent, where it still remains.
16. tocsin, the great alarm bell. Originally tocsin was the name of the Saracen cry of onset.
18. "I am Roland," the inscription on the great bell of Ghent.

Derivations, etc.

Ver.

1. market, from Latin *merc* (*merc-is*), something to be sold.
- „ belfry, from old English *ber-*

Ver.

- fray*, a tower; unconnected in derivation with *bell*.
1. watches, connected with *wake*, as *pouch* with *poke* or *pocket*,

tions of pleasure. "Beautiful morning, ain't it? Glad to see you up so early. Make haste down, and come out. I'll wait for you here."

4. Mr. Pickwick needed no second invitation. Ten minutes sufficed for the completion of his toilet, and at the expiration of that time he was by the old gentleman's side.

5. "Hallo!" said Mr. Pickwick, in his turn, seeing that his companion was armed with a gun, and that another lay ready on the grass. "What's going forward?"

"Why, your friend and I," replied the host, "are going out rook-shooting before breakfast. He's a very good shot, ain't he?"

"I've heard him say he's a capital one," replied Mr. Pickwick; "but I never saw him aim at anything."

"Well," said the host, "I wish he'd come. Joe—Joe."

6. The fat boy, who under the exciting influence of the morning did not appear to be more than three parts and a fraction asleep, emerged from the house.

"Go up, and call the gentleman, and tell him he'll find me and Mr. Pickwick in the rookery. Show the gentleman the way there; d'ye hear?"

7. The boy departed to execute his commission; and the host, carrying both guns, like a second Robinson Crusoe, led the way from the garden.

8. "Here they are," said Mr. Pickwick; and as he spoke, the forms of Mr. Tupman, Mr. Snodgrass, and Mr. Winkle appeared in the distance. The fat



23.—MR. WINKLE GOES ROOK-SHOOTING.

[Mr. Pickwick, an elderly gentleman, with three companions, Mr. Tupman, Mr. Snodgrass, and Mr. Winkle, is visiting Mr. Wardle, a hearty and hospitable country gentleman. Mr. Winkle is a young man rather fond of claiming accomplishments which he has not acquired, and this passage shows how his failing brings him into difficulties.]

1. Mr. Pickwick thrust his head out of the lattice, and looked around him. The rich, sweet smell of the hay-ricks rose to his chamber window; the hundred perfumes of the little flower-garden beneath scented the air around; the deep-green meadows shone in the morning dew that glistened on every leaf as it trembled in the gentle air; and the birds sang as if every sparkling drop were to them a fountain of inspiration. Mr. Pickwick fell into an enchanting and delicious reverie.

2. "Hallo!" was the sound that roused him.

He looked to the right but he saw nobody; his eyes wandered to the left, and pierced the prospect; he stared into the sky, but he wasn't wanted there; and then he did what a common mind would have done at once—looked into the garden, and there saw Mr. Wardle.

3. "How are you?" said that good-humoured individual, out of breath with his own anticipa-



MR. WINKLE AND THE ROOKS.

“Stand aside, then. Now for it.”

12. The boy shouted, and shook a branch with a nest on it. Half a dozen young rooks, in violent conversation, flew out to ask what the matter was. The old gentleman fired by way of reply. Down fell one bird, and off flew the others.

“Take him up, Joe,” said the old gentleman.

13. “Now, Mr. Winkle,” said the host, reloading his own gun. “Fire away.”

Mr. Winkle advanced, and levelled his gun. Mr. Pickwick and his friends cowered involuntarily

boy, not being quite certain which gentleman he was directed to call, had with peculiar sagacity, and to prevent the possibility of any mistake, called them all.

"Come along," shouted the old gentleman, addressing Mr. Winkle; "a keen hand like you ought to have been up long ago, even to such poor work as this."

9. Mr. Winkle responded with a forced smile, and took up the spare gun with an expression of countenance which a metaphysical rook, impressed with a foreboding of his approaching death by violence, may be supposed to assume. It might have been keenness, but it looked remarkably like misery.

10. The old gentleman nodded; and two ragged boys who had been marshalled to the spot under the direction of the infant Lambert, forthwith commenced climbing up two of the trees.

11. "What are those lads for?" inquired Mr. Pickwick, abruptly.

"Only to start the game," replied Mr. Wardle, laughing.

"To what?" inquired Mr. Pickwick.

"Why, in plain English, to frighten the rooks."

"Oh! Is that all?"

"You are satisfied?"

"Quite."

"Very well. Shall I begin?"

"If you please," said Mr. Winkle, glad of any respite.

and shut them both;—all this would be as difficult to describe in detail as it would be to depict the gradual recovering of the unfortunate individual, the binding up his arm with pocket-handkerchiefs, and the conveying him back by slow degrees supported by the arms of his anxious friends.

CHARLES DICKENS.

(From the "Pickwick Papers.")

in-spi-ra'tion
de-li'cious
rev'e-rie

an-ti-ci-pa'tions
sa-ga-ci-ty
pos-si-bil'i-ty

met-a-phys'ic-al
in-di-vid'u-al
cor-po're-al

- | | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| Par. | Par |
| 2. reverie, dreamy reflections. | 10. infant Lambert, the fat boy. |
| 10. metaphysical, here meaning philosophical, deeply thoughtful. | Lambert was a noted fat man. |
| | 17. corporeal, bodily. |

Derivations, etc.

- | | |
|--|---|
| Par. | Par. |
| 1. reverie, from French <i>rêve</i> , a dream. | that cannot be divided. Hence a <i>person</i> . |
| 3. good-humoured, humour from Lat. <i>humor</i> , a fluid of the body. It was supposed that a person's temper depended on the <i>bodily humours</i> , and hence humour came to mean disposition or temper. | 3. anticipation, from Lat. <i>ante</i> , before, <i>capio</i> , I take. |
| „ individual, from Lat. <i>in</i> , not; <i>divido</i> , I divide. An <i>individual</i> is one, something | 5. companion, from Lat. <i>com</i> , with, and <i>panis</i> , bread; originally a messmate. one who <i>eats bread with</i> another. |
| | 15. determination, from Lat. <i>terminus</i> , an end. <i>Making an end</i> of considering. |

Oral Exercises.

1. What did Mr. Pickwick see when he looked from the window?
2. Why is Mr. Wardle said to have been "like a second Robinson Crusoe"?
3. Describe Mr. Winkle's proceedings.
4. What was done after Mr. Tupman was shot?

Composition.

Write an essay on "Pretentious Ignorance."

to escape damage from the heavy fall of rooks, which they felt quite certain would be occasioned by the devastating barrel of their friend. There was a solemn pause—a shout—a flapping of wings—a faint click.

14. "Hallo!" said the old gentleman.

"Won't it go?" inquired Mr. Pickwick.

"Missed fire," said Mr. Winkle, who was very pale, probably from disappointment.

"Odd," said the old gentleman, taking the gun. "Never knew one of them miss fire before. Why, I don't see anything of the cap."

"Bless my soul," said Mr. Winkle. "I declare I forgot the cap!"

15. The slight omission was rectified. Mr. Pickwick crouched again. Mr. Winkle stepped forward with an air of determination and resolution; and Mr. Tupman looked out from behind a tree. The boy shouted;—four birds flew out. Mr. Winkle fired. There was a scream as of an individual—not a rook—in corporeal anguish. Mr. Tupman had saved the lives of innumerable unoffending birds by receiving a portion of the charge in his left arm.

16. To describe the confusion that ensued would be impossible. To tell how Mr. Pickwick in the first transports of his emotion called Mr. Winkle "Wretch!" how Mr. Tupman lay prostrate on the ground; and how Mr. Winkle knelt horror-stricken beside him; how Mr. Tupman opened first one eye, and then the other, and then fell back

3. This is why there is always a warm corner in the public heart for the miner. He himself, grown familiar with the daily workings of a pit, sees little of the romance. With him, indeed, it is a mere case of earning bread for his family, and although he is quite aware of the hourly risks, he shuts out the contemplation of them and thinks only of his work.

4. The mine I recently descended was the Cinderhill colliery belonging to the Babbington Coal Company, and is situated in a lovely part of Nottinghamshire and not many miles from the centre of the lace industry. Collieries always disfigure the landscape, and so long as we must have coal there is no help for it. As I walked the green lanes I could tell where the colliery was by the shaft which stuck over the trees, and by the dun smoke which hung in the breathless air.

5. On the colliery ground were strings of railway trucks laden with coal ready to be trained off to different parts of the country. There was the whir of the two great wheels over the pit mouth, one lowering empty cages while the other brought up cages with tubs or corves filled with coal. There were few men about, except those engaged in removing the filled tubs and putting back empty ones.

6. The cage is made of open iron bars, with a metal plate over the top to protect anyone inside from pieces of falling coal. It is raised and lowered by means of a steel rope which runs on



AT THE MOUTH OF THE MINE.

24.—IN A COAL MINE.

PART I.

1. In the public mind a halo of romance surrounds the head of the coal-miner. There is something that is fascinating about the life of men who daily descend into the blackness of a pit and hew the coal which cheers us by its bright brisk flame on a cold winter evening.

2. When they go down to their work no one knows whether they will ever come back again. They are surrounded by dangers. There may be an explosion, or a sudden rush of water, or the falling in of a roof. A mine is very much like a ship. In the case of disaster there is no back door by which escape can be made. The men are caught in a hole and death comes to them in shapes that make one shudder.



AT THE FACE OF THE COAL.

shadows dancing on the white-washed roof, but above all, the impression which laid hold of me was one of loneliness.

10. When accustomed to the gloom we got into one of the empty tubs. There were a number of them fastened together, and a lanky lad sitting on the front of the first seized the endless rope with a pair of tongs, and then we were rattled through the tunnel, lit at long distances by stray lamps.

11. These tubs are not comfortable things to ride in. Their use is to carry coals, not humanity; indeed there are very strict rules against any of

a massive reel in the engine-house. There is a little hut close to the pit mouth from which a man can watch the unloading.

7. As soon as the empty corves are ready to send down he signals to the engine-house. A man in the engine-house pulls a lever and away the cage goes. The engineman can tell by certain marks on the rope when the cages approach the bottom or top, and so he slows gently.

8. One singular thing everybody notices on going down the mine is the absolute certainty that you are rising instead of descending. At first you are startled by the fall, and then when you begin to collect your thoughts you seem to realise you are going up. This idea clings to you, although you know perfectly well you are going down, and you are not able to get rid of it till the cage stops; you step out into a dim-lit tunnel and learn you are at the mine bottom, 660 feet from the surface.

9. I found it necessary to sit down for a minute or two to accustom my eyes to the gloom. Tubs laden with coal were being drawn towards the pit bottom by an endless wire rope running round the various workings, the empty tubs being sent over the rails on the return journey of the rope. There was the thumping of the tubs as they knocked together and the shouting of the men to one another as they filled the cages and signalled by means of an electric wire to the surface; there were dull eerie echoes and strange



AT THE FACE OF THE COAL.

shadows dancing on the white-washed roof, but above all, the impression which laid hold of me was one of loneliness.

10. When accustomed to the gloom we got into one of the empty tubs. There were a number of them fastened together, and a lanky lad sitting on the front of the first seized the endless rope with a pair of tongs, and then we were rattled through the tunnel, lit at long distances by stray lamps.

11. These tubs are not comfortable things to ride in. Their use is to carry coals, not humanity; indeed there are very strict rules against any of

a massive reel in the engine-house. There is a little hut close to the pit mouth from which a man can watch the unloading.

7. As soon as the empty corves are ready to send down he signals to the engine-house. A man in the engine-house pulls a lever and away the cage goes. The engineman can tell by certain marks on the rope when the cages approach the bottom or top, and so he slows gently.

8. One singular thing everybody notices on going down the mine is the absolute certainty that you are rising instead of descending. At first you are startled by the fall, and then when you begin to collect your thoughts you seem to realise you are going up. This idea clings to you, although you know perfectly well you are going down, and you are not able to get rid of it till the cage stops; you step out into a dim-lit tunnel and learn you are at the mine bottom, 660 feet from the surface.

9. I found it necessary to sit down for a minute or two to accustom my eyes to the gloom. Tubs laden with coal were being drawn towards the pit bottom by an endless wire rope running round the various workings, the empty tubs being sent over the rails on the return journey of the rope. There was the thumping of the tubs as they knocked together and the shouting of the men to one another as they filled the cages and signalled by means of an electric wire to the surface; there were dull eerie echoes and strange



AT THE FACE OF THE COAL.

shadows dancing on the white-washed roof, but above all, the impression which laid hold of me was one of loneliness.

10. When accustomed to the gloom we got into one of the empty tubs. There were a number of them fastened together, and a lanky lad sitting on the front of the first seized the endless rope with a pair of tongs, and then we were rattled through the tunnel, lit at long distances by stray lamps.

11. These tubs are not comfortable things to ride in. Their use is to carry coals, not humanity; indeed there are very strict rules against any of

a massive reel in the engine-house. There is a little hut close to the pit mouth from which a man can watch the unloading.

7. As soon as the empty corves are ready to send down he signals to the engine-house. A man in the engine-house pulls a lever and away the cage goes. The engineman can tell by certain marks on the rope when the cages approach the bottom or top, and so he slows gently.

8. One singular thing everybody notices on going down the mine is the absolute certainty that you are rising instead of descending. At first you are startled by the fall, and then when you begin to collect your thoughts you seem to realise you are going up. This idea clings to you, although you know perfectly well you are going down, and you are not able to get rid of it till the cage stops; you step out into a dim-lit tunnel and learn you are at the mine bottom, 660 feet from the surface.

9. I found it necessary to sit down for a minute or two to accustom my eyes to the gloom. Tubs laden with coal were being drawn towards the pit bottom by an endless wire rope running round the various workings, the empty tubs being sent over the rails on the return journey of the rope. There was the thumping of the tubs as they knocked together and the shouting of the men to one another as they filled the cages and signalled by means of an electric wire to the surface; there were dull eerie echoes and strange



BRINGING ALONG THE EMPTY TUBS.

25.—IN A COAL MINE.

PART II.

1. Cut out of the rock overhead was an engine-room. It was a strange thing to find an engine panting hundreds of feet underground, but here were engines working a rope a mile and a half long, used for bringing the filled tubs from various parts of distant workings. It was intolerably hot; five minutes I found quite long enough to stay in the room.

2. Here, long hour after hour, a couple of men sit attending to the engines and working the levers. Their lot, like that of Gilbert's policeman, is not a happy one, but I was interested to find that they tried to make their surroundings bright,

the workmen riding in them. The constant jolting and shaking over the uneven metals soon began to make me feel sore.

(Adapted from the "Windsor Magazine," by permission of Messrs. Ward, Lock, & Co., Ltd.)

fas'cin-a-ting
ex-plo-sion
dis-ast'er

fa-mil'i-ar
con-tem-pla-tion
col-li-er-y

in'dus-try
re-al-ise'
ac-cus'tom

Par.

1. halo, a ring of light that sometimes appears to surround the sun or moon, especially before bad weather; hence applied to the "glory" with which early painters encircled the heads of saints.

Par.

1. fascinating, very pleasing and attractive.
3. contemplation, thinking over.
9. endless rope, a rope with its two ends joined.

Derivations, etc.

Par.

1. romance, from Lat. *Romanus*, a Roman. French, Italian, Spanish, etc., were called the *Roman* or *Romance* tongues because they were derived from Latin, the language spoken by the Romans. Fictitious stories were usually written in these languages, learned works being in Latin, so that such stories got the name of Romances.

Par.

1. fascinating, from Lat. *fascino*, I bewitch.
3. familiar, from Lat. *familia*, a household.
6. engine, from Lat. *ingenium*, a device.
7. lever, from Lat. *levo*, I raise, French *lever*, to raise.
9. journey, from Lat. *diurnus*, daily, French *jour*, a day. Originally a *day's* work or travel.

Oral Exercises.

1. Why are people specially interested in the collier's work?
2. What effect has coalmining on the appearance of the country?
3. Describe the journey down the shaft, and the arrival in the mine.

Composition.

Write an essay on "Coal."



BRINGING ALONG THE EMPTY TUBS.

25.—IN A COAL MINE.

PART II.

1. Cut out of the rock overhead was an engine-room. It was a strange thing to find an engine panting hundreds of feet underground, but here were engines working a rope a mile and a half long, used for bringing the filled tubs from various parts of distant workings. It was intolerably hot; five minutes I found quite long enough to stay in the room.

2. Here, long hour after hour, a couple of men sit attending to the engines and working the levers. Their lot, like that of Gilbert's policeman, is not a happy one, but I was interested to find that they tried to make their surroundings bright,

the workmen riding in them. The constant jolting and shaking over the uneven metals soon began to make me feel sore.

(Adapted from the "Windsor Magazine," by permission of Messrs. Ward, Lock, & Co., Ltd.)

fas'cin-a-ting

ex-plo'sion

dis-ast'er

fa-mil'i-ar

con-tem-pla'tion

col'li-er-y

in'dus-try

re-al-ise'

ac-cus'tom

Par.

1. halo, a ring of light that sometimes appears to surround the sun or moon, especially before bad weather; hence applied to the "glory" with which early painters encircled the heads of saints.

Par.

1. fascinating, very pleasing and attractive.
3. contemplation, thinking over.
9. endless rope, a rope with its two ends joined.

Derivations, etc.

Par.

1. romance, from Lat. *Romanus*, a Roman. French, Italian, Spanish, etc., were called the *Roman* or *Romance* tongues because they were derived from Latin, the language spoken by the Romans. Fictitious stories were usually written in these languages, learned works being in Latin, so that such stories got the name of Romances.

Par.

1. fascinating, from Lat. *fascino*, I bewitch.
3. familiar, from Lat. *familia*, a household.
6. engine, from Lat. *ingenium*, a device.
7. lever, from Lat. *levo*, I raise, French *lever*, to raise.
9. journey, from Lat. *diurnus*, daily, French *jour*, a day. Originally a *day's* work or travel.

Oral Exercises.

1. Why are people specially interested in the collier's work?
2. What effect has coalmining on the appearance of the country?
3. Describe the journey down the shaft, and the arrival in the mine.

Composition.

Write an essay on "Coal."

7. Presently far ahead and apparently no larger than a pinhead I discerned a light. It grew larger, and presently came a far-off rumbling. It was the approach of a train of tubs filled with coal.

The youth in front, with his lamp swung before him, gave a shout of warning and we stepped into one of the crevices in the wall, specially made for men to shelter in, while a train rumbled along the narrow way. Past us and away into the mirk went the tubs until silence again reigned and we trudged along once more.

8. I spent a long time seeing the men winning the coal. After a way had been cleared under the seam, the props which held it up were withdrawn, and sometimes the piece would fall in huge blocks; but more often the coal remained fixed. Then it was necessary to drill a deep hole at the top of the seam, put a charge of gunpowder into it, and then fire it. This always dislodged the coal, which fell with a crash, and the roar of the blast rumbled away through the tunnels.

9. I have before mentioned that the men are paid by the amount of coal they get. The mine owners make a contract with three men to work what is known as a stall at a certain price per ton. These men go shares, but they have to employ other men, perhaps five or six, to do what may be called labouring work, and these are termed day men, receiving their six shillings

for one of them, with an artistic turn, had painted, and painted rather well, a number of decorations on the engines.

3. Besides a manager and an under-manager, each colliery has day and night deputies, men whose duty it is to be constantly walking round the colliery inspecting the roof, marking with chalk places that need bolstering up, seeing that the ways are clear and all obstructions removed.

4. Every mine has two shafts; this has been required by Act of Parliament ever since an accident, when, many years ago, some machinery fell into a pit and blocked it up, so that the men in the mine were starved to death. By means of a huge fan air is driven down one shaft, and by an inclined drift it is led to the other shaft where it escapes.

5. At various places in the mine there are doors to send the current round and through some workings at a distance. So when roads are being made it is usual to have them in pairs for the air to journey up one and down the other. One may grasp some conception of the size of the Cinderhill colliery when I say that 100,000 cubic feet of air is escaping up the shaft every minute.

6. As we went further into the mine, where there were no lamps, the stillness was awful. It was as quiet as a chamber of death. It was pitch dark, save for the glimmer of the lamps we carried. Not a sound disturbed the silence except our steady tread.

covered with dirt, but face and hands are like those of a sweep, whilst one suffers a decided inconvenience from the knowledge that grains of coal have worked their way down between the collar and neck.

(Adapted from the "Windsor Magazine," by permission of Messrs. Ward, Lock, & Co., Ltd.)

in-tol'er-ab-ly

crev'i-ces

pas'sa-ble

Par.

2. Gilbert's policeman, in "The Pirates of Penzance."

3. deputies, men who perform a duty in place of another.

Par.

6. drift, a horizontal or sloping passage *driven* through rock or coal.

Derivations, etc.

Par.

2. lot, originally anything got by chance; hence the conditions of one's life.

5. pair, from Lat. *par*, equal.

Par.

Two things of the same kind.

11. drill, connected with *-tril* in *nostril*, and with *thrill*.

Oral Exercises.

1. How is a coal mine inspected?
2. Describe a walk in a coal mine.
3. Describe the method of paying the various colliers.

Composition.

Write an essay on "Everyday Heroes." (Refer to colliers, sailors, railway officials, and others whose daily work brings them into danger.)

or so a day each, whether much coal has been won or not. But, of course, taking one day with another, it works out all right for the men who contract; they usually make very good wages.

10. It was a long and tiresome tramp back to the pit bottom. Once more we stepped into the



IN A WORKING.

cage, and then, as though being dragged through a gale of wind, we shot upwards.

11. We had been many hours in the gloom of the mine, and our eyes were dazzled by the daylight. Then there was one's personal appearance. One might enter a cage a fairly passable individual, but on coming out the same could hardly be said. Not only are one's clothes

boy, who being fond of playing with fire, as youngers of his age commonly are, let some sparks escape into a bundle of straw, which kindling quickly, spread the conflagration over every part of their poor mansion, till it was reduced to ashes.

4. Together with the cottage (a sorry antediluvian make-shift of a building, you may think it), what was of much more importance, a fine litter of new-farrowed pigs, no less than nine in number, perished. China pigs have been esteemed a luxury all over the east, from the remotest periods that we read of.

5. Bo-bo was in the utmost consternation, as you may think, not so much for the sake of the tenement, which his father and he could easily build up again with a few dry branches, and the labour of an hour or two, at any time, as for the loss of the pigs.

6. While he was thinking what he should say to his father, and wringing his hands over the smoking remnants of one of those untimely sufferers, an odour assailed his nostrils, unlike any scent which he had before experienced. What could it proceed from?—not from the burnt cottage—he had smelt that smell before—indeed this was by no means the first accident of the kind which had occurred through the negligence of this unlucky young fire-brand. Much less did it resemble that of any known herb, weed, or flower. A premonitory moisten-



HO-TI COLLECTING FOOD FOR HIS PIGS.

26.—THE DISCOVERY OF ROAST PIG.

PART I.

1. Mankind, says a Chinese manuscript, which my friend M. was obliging enough to read and explain to me, for the first seventy thousand ages ate their meat raw, clawing or biting it from the living animal, just as they do in Abyssinia to this day.

2. This period is not obscurely hinted at by their great Confucius in the second chapter of his "Mundane Mutations," where he designates a kind of golden age by the term Cho-fang, literally the Cook's Holiday. The Manuscript goes on to say, that the art of roasting, or rather broiling (which I take to be the elder brother) was accidentally discovered in the manner following.

3. The swineherd, Ho-ti, having gone out into the woods one morning, as his manner was, to collect mast for his hogs, left his cottage in the care of his eldest son, Bo-bo, a great lubberly

little more sensible of his situation, something like the following dialogue ensued.

10. "You graceless whelp, what have you got there devouring? Is it not enough that you have burned me down three houses with your dog's tricks, but you must be eating fire, and I know not what—what have you got there, I say?" "O father, the pig, the pig—do come and taste how nice the burnt pig eats."

CHARLES LAMB.

man'u-script
lit'er-al-ly
ac-ci-den'tal-ly
con-fla-gra'tion
man'sion

an-te-di-lu'vi-an
con-ster-na'tion
ten'e-ment
neg'li-gence
pre-mon'i-to-ry

de-li'cious
re-trib'u-to-ry
in-con-ve'ni-en-ces
sit-u-a'tion
di'a-logue

Par.

1. manuscript, something written by hand. Of course the manuscript is, like the incidents of the story, entirely imaginary.
- „ the living animal. The traveller Bruce saw the cruelty here referred to; but it is not, and was not, a usual custom among the Abyssinians.
- „ the first seventy thousand ages, a jest at the expense of the Chinese and other nations who pretend that they are very ancient.

Par.

2. Confucius, a Chinese philosopher who lived five hundred years before Christ.
2. Cho-fang, a manufactured word.
3. mast, beech-nuts.
4. antediluvian, very ancient or old-fashioned; literally from before the flood.
6. premonitory moistening, the flow of saliva which causes what is known as "the mouth watering."
- „ nether, lower.
9. callous, unfeeling.

Derivations, etc.

Par

1. obliging, from Lat. *obligo*, I bind. To *oblig* a person is to *bind* him, either by force to do something, or by favour to oneself.
2. chapter, from Lat. *caput*, the

Par.

- head, a division with a separate *heading*.
- 3 mansion, from Lat. *maneo*, I remain, an *abiding* place, and hence a house, a great house. What other word

ing at the same time overflowed his nether lip. He knew not what to think.

7. He next stooped down to feel the pig, if there were any signs of life in it. He burnt his fingers, and to cool them he applied them in his booby fashion to his mouth. Some of the crumbs of the scorched skin had come away with his fingers, and for the first time in his life (in the world's life indeed, for before that no man had known it) he tasted *crackling*.

8. Again he felt and fumbled at the pig. It did not burn him so much now; still he licked his fingers from a sort of habit. The truth at length broke into his slow understanding that it was the pig that smelt so, and the pig that tasted so delicious; and surrendering himself up to the new-born pleasure, he fell to tearing up whole handfuls of the scorched skin with the flesh next it, and was cramming it down his throat in his beastly fashion, when his sire entered amid the smoking rafters, armed with retributory cudgel, and finding how affairs stood, began to rain blows upon the young rogue's shoulders, as thick as hail-stones, which Bo-bo heeded not any more than if they had been flies.

9. The tickling pleasure, which he experienced in his lower regions, had rendered him quite callous to any inconveniences he might feel in those remote quarters. His father might lay on, but he could not beat him from his pig, till he had fairly made an end of it, when, becoming a

some of its flavour, which, make what sour mouths he would for pretence, proved not altogether displeasing to him. In conclusion (for the manuscript here is a little tedious), both father and son fairly set down to the mess and



BO-BO AND THE ROAST FIGS.

never left off till they had despatched all that remained of the litter.

4. Bo-bo was strictly enjoined not to let the secret escape, for the neighbours would certainly have stoned them for a couple of abominable wretches, who could think of improving upon the good meat which God had sent them. Nevertheless, strange stories got about. It was ob-

Par.

from *manco* means a special kind of house?

3. bundles, from *bind*. Give two other nouns derived from *bind*.

Par.

6. nostrils, from *nose*, and *thirl*, to pierce.

7. fashion, from Lat. *facio*, I make.

Oral Exercises.

1. Describe the accident which led to the discovery of roast pig.
2. What happened when Bo-bo found that the taste of "burnt pig" was good?

Composition.

Write an essay on "Carefulness."

27.—THE DISCOVERY OF ROAST PIG.

PART II.

1. The ears of Ho-ti tingled with horror. He cursed his son, and he cursed himself, that ever he should have a son that should eat burnt pig.

2. Bo-bo raked out another pig, and fairly rending it asunder thrust the lesser half by main force into the hands of Ho-ti, still shouting out, "Eat, eat, eat the burnt pig, father; only taste—Good Gracious!"—with such-like irreverent ejaculations, cramming all the while as if he would choke.

3. Ho-ti trembled in every joint while he grasped the abominable thing, wavering whether he should not put his son to death for an unnatural young monster, when the crackling scorched his fingers, as it had done his son's; and applying the same remedy to them, he in his turn tasted

bought up all the pigs that could be had for love or money. In a few days his lordship's town-house was observed to be on fire.

8. The thing took wing, and now there was nothing to be seen but fire in every direction. Fuel and pigs grew enormously dear all over the district. The insurance offices one and all shut up shop. People built slighter and slighter every day, until it was feared that the very science of architecture would in no long time be lost to the world.

9. Thus this custom of firing houses continued, till in process of time, says my Manuscript, a sage arose, like our Locke, who made a discovery, that the flesh of swine, or indeed of any other animal, might be cooked (burnt, as they called it) without the necessity of consuming a whole house to dress it.

10. Then first began the rude form of a grid-iron. Roasting by the string or spit came in a century or two later, I forget in whose dynasty. By such slow degrees, concludes the Manuscript, do the most useful, and seemingly the most obvious arts, make their way among mankind.

11. Without placing too implicit faith in the account above given, it must be agreed, that if a worthy pretext for so dangerous an experiment as setting houses on fire (especially in these days) could be assigned in favour of any culinary object, that pretext and excuse might be found in "roast pig."

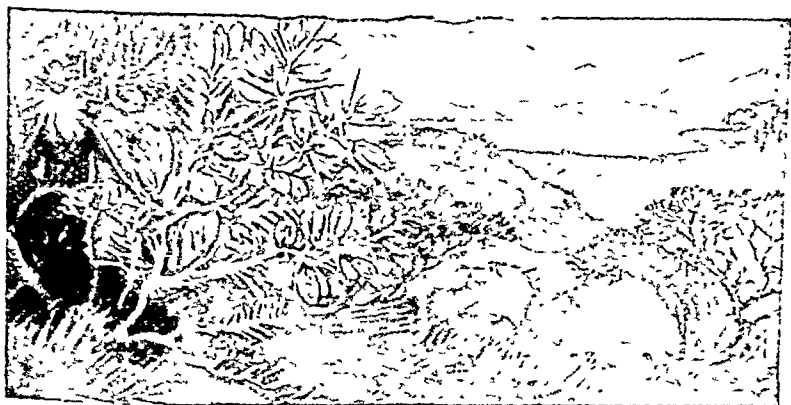
CHARLES LAMB.

served that Ho-ti's cottage was burned down now more frequently than ever. Nothing but fires from this time forward. Some would break out in broad day, others in the night-time.

5. As often as there were young pigs, so sure was the house of Ho-ti to be in a blaze; and Ho-ti himself,—which was the more remarkable,—instead of chastising his son, seemed to grow more indulgent to him than ever. At length they were watched, the terrible mystery discovered, and father and son summoned to take their trial at Peking, then an inconsiderable assize town.

6. Evidence was given, the obnoxious food itself produced in court, and verdict about to be pronounced, when the foreman of the jury begged that some of the burnt pig of which the culprits stood accused, might be handed into the box. He handled it, and they all handled it; and burning their fingers, as Bo-bo and his father had done before them, and nature prompting to each of them the same remedy, against the face of all facts, and the clearest charge which judge had ever given—to the surprise of the whole court, townsfolk, strangers, reporters, and all present—without leaving the box, or any manner of consultation whatever, they brought in a simultaneous verdict of “Not Guilty.”

7. The judge, who was a shrewd fellow, winked at the manifest iniquity of the decision: and when the court was dismissed, went privily, and



28.—LESSONS FROM THE GORSE.

“To win the secret of a weed’s plain heart.”—LOWELL.

1. Mountain gorses, ever golden,
Cankered not the whole year long—
Do ye teach us to be strong,
Howsoever pricked and holden
Like your thorny blooms, and so
Trodden on by rain and snow,
Up the hill-side of this life, as bleak as where
ye grow?
2. Mountain blossoms, shining blossoms,
Do ye teach us to be glad
When no summer can be had,
Blooming in our inward bosoms?
Ye, whom God preserveth still,
Set as lights upon a hill,
Tokens to the wintry earth that Beauty liveth
still

e-jac-u-la'tions	ob-nox'i-ous	de-ci'sion
a-bom'in-a-ble	con-sul-ta'tions	e-nor'mous-ly
con-clu'sion	sim-ul-ta'ne-ous	ar-chi-tect'ure
mys'te-ry	man'i-fest	ne-ces'si-ty
in-con-sid'er-a-ble	in-i'qui-ty	dyn'-as-ty

Par.

3. wavering, hesitating.
 „ make what sour mouths he would for pretence, however he might assume an expression of disgust.

Par.

5. assize town, a town visited by judges travelling on circuit.
 6. simultaneous verdict, decision given at once.

Derivations, etc.

Par.

2. main force, from Lat. *magnus*, great.
 „ barbarous, from Greek *baros*, foreign. People often have a prejudice against foreigners, and thus *barbarous* came to mean *uncivilised* or *cruel*. Similarly in England "un-English" and in America "un-American" are often used to express disapprobation.

Par.

3. monster, from Lat. *monstro*, I show. A monster was anything strange or that could be made a show of. Gradually it came to mean a giant.
 6. simultaneous, from Lat. *simul*, at once.
 11. culinary, from Lat. *culina*, a kitchen.

Oral Exercises.

1. If the story of Ho-ti and Bo-bo were told seriously, what points in it would show it to be incorrect?
2. How were Ho-ti, the jury, and the judge won over to the custom of eating roast pig?

Composition.

- Write a letter to a friend describing Lamb's story of the discovery of Roast Pig.

Ver.

4. in prostration new, in new prayers of thankfulness for the lesson which the gorse teaches.

Ver.

4. they are not tears but dew, tears not of sorrow, but of deeply stirred religious feeling.

Derivations, etc.

Ver.

1. bloom, old English word, now generally replaced by the word "flower," from Lat. *flos* (*flor-is*), through French *fleur*. "Testament" and "Will" are also examples of two words with the same or nearly the same meaning, one from Latin or French, the other an old English word.
2. academic, from *Academia*, the name of a suburb with gardens near Athens. Here

Ver.

- Plato, a great philosopher, taught his disciples, and hence a university or school came to be called an academy.
3. azure, from the Arabic. Other Arabic words in English are "algebra," "azimuth." Name other examples.
- ., humblest, from Lat. *humilis*, humble. Mention other words in which *b* has been inserted after *m*.

Oral Exercises.

1. What lesson does Mrs. Browning draw from the gorse?
2. Why are the gorse blossoms said to be "tokens to the wintry earth that Beauty liveth still"?

Composition.

Write an essay on "Common Flowers."

29.—THE ISLE OF SARK.

1. If I were a physician and consulted by some jaded city brainworker with nerves overwrought as to where he should go for a summer holiday, I should advise him to visit Sark, the gem of the Channel Islands, as it is often called. This little island is beyond all other places the one most likely to restore him to mental and physical health, for in addition to its other advantages

3. Mountain gorses, do ye teach us
 From that academic chair
 Canopied with azure air,
 That the wisest word man reaches
 Is the humblest he can speak?
 Ye, who live on mountain peak,
 Yet live low along the ground, beside the
 grasses meek.
4. Mountain gorses, since Linnæus
 Knelt beside you on the sod,—
 For your beauty thanking God,—
 For your teaching, ye should see us
 Bowing in prostration new—
 Whence arisen,—if one or two
 Drops be on our cheeks—O world, they are not
 tears but dew.

ELIZABETH BARRETT BROWNING.

a-ca-dem'ic
 can'o-pied

a'zure
 Lin-næ'us

beau'ty
 pros-tra'tion

Ver.

1. trodden on by rain and snow,
 pained and injured by the
 troubles of life.
 „ the hill-side of this life, be-
 cause life has many diffi-
 culties like pressing up a
 hill-side. Compare Bun-
 yan's "Hill Difficulty" in
The Pilgrim's Progress.
 2. when no summer can be had,
 when there is no joy in life.
 „ blooming in our inward
 bosoms, with calm and
 settled peace even in time
 of grief.

Ver.

3. academic chair, the chair of
 a teacher or professor.
 Here the gorse is supposed
 to be the teacher and the
 hill-side the chair.
 3. canopied, with azure air,
 with the blue air and sky
 above it, like the canopy of
 a throne or chair of state.
 4. Linnæus, a great Swedish
 botanist, who, when he first
 saw gorse blossom, knelt
 down and thanked God that
 He had shown him so
 beautiful a sight.

uniform shade, more brilliant even than that of the emerald, a colour I have never seen anywhere except in these waters.

5. Dixcart Bay, the most frequented of the bays, is on account of its many and convenient shore rocks the favourite bathing-place, and here whole families bathe together in French fashion. Bathing machines, and also German bands, are unknown; indeed, the waiters at our hotel were the only articles in Sark which to our knowledge had been "made in Germany." I will not attempt to describe the bays, they are all lovely, as indeed is the whole of the scenery.

6. My friend and I walked one evening by moonlight across the coupée, a narrow piece of land which connects Sark with Little Sark, to look at the moonlight effect on the water. We stopped for a moment near the coupée to look across the sea at the distant lights of Guernsey, which seemed like some unreal and fairy island, and then we walked on to Little Sark.

7. We were well rewarded for our trouble, for what we saw was both beautiful and curious. In the foreground a mass of dark purple cliffs or hedges, I am not sure which, and from above, the moon throwing a pathway of light along the water, which near the horizon was of a distinct and delicate crimson, blending as it approached us into a light vivid green. On either side the dark and melancholy sea.

8. Sark is comparatively easy of access from

the air there is bracing without being too strong for the dweller in towns.

2. Here he can eat the lotus with no thought of yesterday or to-morrow. Shut off from the world in a little earthly paradise of scenery and colour, he can idle through the half hours that seemed so precious in the city without either anxiety or regret.

3. Sark is only three and a half miles long by one and a half miles broad in its widest part, but its scenery more than compensates for its diminutive size, and inland it is thickly wooded. Sark is like a picture in which every inch of space has been utilised in order to heighten the general effect. The colouring is different from any I have ever seen in England, and from its brilliancy and purity is the admiration—and despair—of the artist. The rocks are hard and brittle, and have all kinds of curious physiognomies. Although Sark is only one hour's distance by steamer from Guernsey the rocks are entirely different in formation from the Guernsey rocks, equally picturesque in outline and infinitely more varied in colour.

4. The Sark bays are smaller, and the sea—but the Sark sea is indescribable. In one bay on a hot summer's day it is of a pale bluish green, tinged everywhere with crimson, with here and there darker purple patches, and at times, just below the distant cliffs, the green becomes a bright emerald. In another part it is of a

Par.

to have a desire for anything but quiet rest. "To eat the lotus" is, therefore, to have complete rest.

Par.

3. physiognomies, appearance of the face. Here it means shape and appearance of the rocks.

Derivations, etc.

Par.

1. physician, from Gr. *physis*, nature.

6. coupée, from French *couper*, to cut.

7. curious, from Lat. *cura*, care; that which must be sought for carefully.

„ vivid, from Lat. *vivo*, I live.

„ melancholy, from Gr. *melas*

(*melan-os*), black, *cholē*, bile. It was supposed that a sad and desponding disposition in a person proceeded from an over-abundance of bile. Mention any other word descriptive of disposition, similarly derived.

Oral Exercises.

1. What makes Sark suitable as a resort for tired city dwellers?
2. Describe the general appearance of Sark.
3. Explain the phrase "the admiration—and despair—of the artist."
4. By what route do people go to Sark?

Composition.

Write an essay on (a) "Holidays and their Uses";
or (b) "My Favourite Holiday Resort."



the mainland, for the tourist has only to change from the Southampton or Weymouth steamer, which reaches Guernsey about half-past six in the morning, to one which leaves for Sark at ten o'clock, arriving there in about an hour. The harbour is very quaint, and after landing the visitor is obliged to walk or drive through a natural hole in the rock. I had been staying at Guernsey for a fortnight before going to Sark, and at once felt the difference in the air by an increase of general vigour: for in Sark one can walk morning, noon, and night without feeling fatigue.

9. For those who like constant change there are plenty of excursions from Sark to the islands round about. If the visitor wishes, he may go by steamer to Herm for the day to see the shell beach and search there for specimens. He will not be allowed to go all over the island, as it has been taken on lease by a German Prince who objects to people exploring his island. He is unable to prevent them from visiting the shell beach. The tourist may also go to Jersey, Alderney, or Jethou for the day. L. M.

(By permission from "The Manchester City News.")

phys-i'-cian
com-pen-sate
di-min'-u-tive

phys-i-og'-no-mies
in-de-scri'-ba-ble
cou-pée

ho-ri'-zon
mel'-an-cho-ly
spe'-ci-mens

Par.

1. jaded, quite worn out, over-worked.
2. eat the lotus. The Greek

Par.

poet Homer tells of a land where the lotus grew. If any one ate of it, he ceased

A poet could not but be gay,
 In such a jocund company!
 I gazed—and gazed—but little thought
 What wealth the show to me had brought:

3. For oft when on my couch I lie,
 In vacant or in pensive mood,
 They flash upon that inward eye
 Which is the bliss of solitude,
 And then my heart with pleasure fills,
 And dances with the daffodils.

WILLIAM WORDSWORTH.

daf-fo-dils

con-tin'u-ous

jo-cund

Ver.

1. the lake, Grasmere Lake, Westmorland. Wordsworth lived for many years at Grasmere, and this poem was suggested by the sight of a bed of daffodils near the margin of the lake.
2. milky way, the misty band of light that on a moonless night is seen overhead in the sky. It is composed of countless stars, so many and so far off that they do not appear separately but only as a tract of milky light.

Ver.

2. whatwealth, the rich thoughts the daffodils suggested.
3. vacant or pensive, at leisure or thoughtful.
- „ the inward eye which is the bliss of solitude. The memory of past pleasures which we recal, and of beautiful sights which we can picture again to ourselves, is one of the chief pleasures of solitary meditation. The inward eye is the imagination. The poet Keats says that “a thing of beauty is a joy for ever.”

Derivations, etc.

Ver.

1. flutter, from *flit*.

Ver.

2. jocund, from Latin *jocus*, a jest, *jucundus*, pleasant.

Oral Exercise.

Describe the scene in your own words.

Composition.

Paraphrase the poem;—that is, try to give all its meaning in your own words.



30.

1. I wander'd lonely as a cloud
That floats on high o'er vales and hills,
When all at once I saw a crowd,
A host of golden daffodils,
Beside the lake, beneath the trees,
Fluttering and dancing in the breeze.
2. Continuous as the stars that shine
And twinkle on the milky way,
They stretch'd in never-ending line
Along the margin of a bay:
Ten thousand saw I at a glance,
Tossing their heads in sprightly dance.
The waves beside them danced, but they
Outdid the sparkling waves in glee:—



31.—THE DEATH OF NELSON.

1. The death of Nelson was felt in England as something more than a public calamity: men started at the intelligence, and turned pale, as if they had heard of the loss of a dear friend. An object of our admiration and affection, of our pride and of our hopes, was suddenly taken from us; and it seemed as if we had never till then known how deeply we loved and revered him.

2. What the country had lost in its great naval hero—the greatest of our own and of all former times—was scarcely taken into the account of grief. So perfectly, indeed, had he performed his part, that the maritime war, after the battle of Trafalgar, was considered at an end. The fleets of the enemy were not merely defeated but destroyed; new navies must be built, and a new race of seamen reared for them, before the possibility of their invading our shores could again be contemplated.



LORD NELSON.

appearances upon opening his body, that in the course of nature, he might have attained, like his father, to a good old age. Yet he cannot be said to have fallen prematurely whose work was done; nor ought he to be lamented, who died so full of honours, and at the height of human fame.



THE DEATH OF NELSON.

6. The most triumphant death is that of the martyr; the most awful, that of the martyred patriot; the most splendid, that of the hero in the hour of victory; and if the chariot and the horses of fire had been vouchsafed for Nelson's translation, he could scarcely have departed in a brighter blaze of glory.

7. He has left us, not indeed his mantle of

3. It was not, therefore, from any selfish reflection upon the magnitude of our loss that we mourned for him: the general sorrow was of a higher character. The people of England grieved that funeral ceremonies, and public monuments, and posthumous rewards, were all which they could now bestow upon him whom the king, the legislature, and the nation would have alike delighted to honour; whom every tongue would have blessed; whose presence in every village through which he might have passed would have awakened the church-bells, have given schoolboys a holiday, have drawn children from their sports to gaze upon him, and "old men from the chimney-corner" to look upon Nelson ere they died.

4. The victory of Trafalgar was celebrated, indeed, with the usual forms of rejoicing, but they were without joy; for such already was the glory of the British navy, through Nelson's surpassing genius, that it scarcely seemed to receive any addition from the most signal victory that ever was achieved upon the seas; and the destruction of this mighty fleet, by which all the maritime schemes of France were totally frustrated, hardly appeared to add to our security or strength; for, while Nelson was living to watch the combined squadrons of the enemy, we felt ourselves as secure as now, when they were no longer in existence.

5. There was reason to suppose, from the



32.—TWO POEMS BY BROWNING.

[In these two poems Browning gives diverse expression to his patriotism. In the first he writes as one who, amid the glories of the early Italian summer, finds the memory of the English springtime all the more vivid and dear because it is so different from the surroundings in which he is. In the second, the love of country and the desire to serve her are strengthened by the sight of places connected with the military and naval triumphs of Britain.]

HOME THOUGHTS FROM ABROAD.

Oh, to be in England
Now that April's there,
And whoever wakes in England
Sees, some morning, unaware,
That the lowest boughs and the brushwood
sheaf
Round the elm-tree bole are in tiny leaf,

inspiration, but a name and an example which are at this hour inspiring thousands of the youth of England—a name which is our pride, and an example which will continue to be our shield and our strength. Thus it is that the spirits of the great and the wise continue to live and to act after them.

ROBERT SOUTHEY.

(From the "Life of Nelson.")

mar'i-time
con-tem'pla-ted

post'hu-mous
frus'tra-ted

prem'a-ture-ly
vouch-safed'

Par.

1. calamity, great misfortune.
3. posthumous rewards, rewards or honours paid after the death of the person honoured.
- „ legislature, parliament.

Par.

5. prematurely, before the proper time.
6. chariot and horses of fire, see 2 Kings ii. 11.
- „ vouchsafed, granted.
- „ translation, removal from earth.

Derivations, etc.

Par.

1. admiration, from Lat. *miror*, I wonder.
3. posthumous, from Lat. *post*, after, and *humus*, the ground, hence *after death*.
4. frustrate, from Latin *frustra*, in vain.
- „ security, from Latin *se*, without, *cura*, care.
5. prematurely, from Latin *pre*, before, *maturus*, ripe.
- „ height. Notice the *t*, sign of

Par.

- an abstract noun. Give other examples of abstract nouns with the termination *t* or *th*. What is the most common termination for abstract nouns?
6. martyr, from Greek *martys* (*martyr-os*), a witness; because martyrs bore testimony for their religion.
 - „ patriot, from Greek *patris*, one's native land.

Oral Exercises.

1. How did the feeling with which news of Nelson's death was received in England differ from that which is usually called forth by the death of a great soldier or sailor?
2. What does Southey say about the manner of Nelson's death?

Composition.

Write an essay on (a) "Great Men," or
(b) "The Great Man I Admire Most."



HOME THOUGHTS FROM THE SEA.

Nobly, nobly Cape Saint Vincent to the north-
west died away ;

Sunset ran, one glorious blood-red, reeking
into Cadiz Bay ;

Bluish 'mid the burning water, full in face
Trafalgar lay ;

In the dimmest north-east distance dawned
Gibraltar grand and gray ;

“Here and here did England help me ; how
can I help England ?”—say,

5

Whoso turns as I, this evening, turn to God
to praise and pray,

While Jove's planet rises yonder. silent over
Africa.

ROBERT BROWNING.



While the chaffinch sings on the orchard
bough
In England—now.

And after April, when May follows,
And the whitethroat builds, and all the
swallows, 10

Hark, where my blossomed pear-tree in the
hedge

Leans to the field and scatters on the clover
Blossoms and dewdrops—at the bent spray's
edge—

That's the wise thrush; he sings each song
twice over,

Lest you should think he never could re-
capture 15

The first fine careless rapture—

And though the fields look rough with hoary
dew

All will be gay when noontide wakes anew
The buttercups, the little children's dower
—Far brighter than this gaudy melon-flower. 20





33.—THE TRIAL OF ALICE LISLE.

[In 1685, the Duke of Monmouth raised an insurrection in the West of England against James II. He was defeated, and Judge Jeffreys was sent from London to try the prisoners who had been concerned in the rebellion. The following extracts from Macaulay's History give an account of the first of these trials.]

PART I.

1. At Winchester the Chief Justice first opened his commission. Hampshire had not been the theatre of war; but many of the vanquished rebels had, like their leader, fled thither. Two of them, John Hickes, a Nonconformist divine, and Richard Nelthorpe, a lawyer who had been outlawed for taking part in the Rye House plot, had sought refuge at the house of Alice, widow of John Lisle.

2. John Lisle had been created a lord by Cromwell. The titles given by the Protector had not been recognised by any government which had ruled England since the downfall of his house; but they appear to have been often used in conversation even by Royalists. John Lisle's widow

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>Line.
5. the brushwood sheaf, the underwood growing round the trunk.
6. bole, the trunk.
19. the children's dower, the children's portion. <i>Dower</i></p> | <p>Line.
is strictly a <i>marriage</i> portion.
20. gaudy, over-gay.
,, melon-flower. The melon-flower is bright yellow.</p> |
|--|--|

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1. Cape St. Vincent, in S.W. of Portugal, where Sir John Jervis defeated the Spanish in 1797.
2. Cadiz, in S.W. of Spain, scene of English victories in the time of Elizabeth.
3. Trafalgar, where Nelson de-</p> | <p>stroyed the French and Spanish fleets in 1805.
4. Gibraltar, bravely captured and stubbornly defended by the British.
7. Jove's planet, the planet Jupiter.</p> |
|--|--|

Derivations, etc.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>Line.
7. orchard, from Old English <i>ortgeard</i> or <i>wyrtgeard</i>, a wortyard or yard for roots; hence any enclosed piece of cultivated ground; hence an enclosure of fruit trees.
13. spray, connected with <i>sprig</i>.
16. rapture, from Latin <i>rapiō</i> (<i>raptum</i>), I seize. Rapture</p> | <p>Line.
is when one is <i>seized</i> or <i>carried out of oneself</i>.
19. dower, from Latin <i>dos</i> (<i>dot-is</i>), a bridal portion, <i>dotarius</i>, belonging to a bride's portion.
20. gaudy, from Lat. <i>gaudeo</i>, I rejoice.</p> |
|---|---|

Oral Exercises.

1. Give, in your own words, Browning's description of the signs of April and of May in England.
2. Explain what is meant by "*Here and here did England help me; how can I help England?*"

Composition.

Write an essay on "Spring."

and the accessory after the fact. He who conceals from justice one whom he knows to be a murderer is liable to punishment, but not to the punishment of murder. He, on the other



THE LADY ALICE AND THE SOLDIERS.

hand, who shelters one whom he knows to be a traitor, is, according to all our jurists, guilty of high treason.

8. It is unnecessary to point out the absurdity and cruelty of a law which includes under the

was therefore commonly known as the Lady Alice.

3. She was related to many respectable, and to some noble, families; and she was generally esteemed even by the Tory gentlemen of her county. For it was well known to them that she had deeply regretted some violent acts in which her husband had borne a part, that she had shed bitter tears for Charles the First, and that she had protected and relieved many Cavaliers in their distress.

4. The same womanly kindness, which had led her to befriend the Royalists in their time of trouble, would not suffer her to refuse a meal and a hiding place to the wretched men who now entreated her to protect them. She took them into her house, set meat and drink before them, and showed them where they might take rest.

5. The next morning her dwelling was surrounded by soldiers. Strict search was made. Hickes was found concealed in the malthouse, and Nelthorpe in the chimney.

6. If Lady Alice knew her guests to have been concerned in the insurrection, she was undoubtedly guilty of what in strictness was a capital crime. For the law of principal and accessory, as respects high treason, then was, and is to this day, in a state disgraceful to English jurisprudence.

7. In cases of felony, a distinction, founded on justice and reason, is made between the principal

one, has treated with rigour persons guilty merely of harbouring defeated and flying insurgents. To women especially has been granted, by a kind of tacit prescription, the right of indulging, in the midst of havoc and vengeance, that compassion which is the most endearing of all their charms.

13. Since the beginning of the great civil war, numerous rebels, some of them far more important than Hickes or Nelthorpe, have been protected from the severity of victorious governments by female adroitness and generosity. But no English ruler who has been thus baffled, the savage and implacable James alone excepted, has had the barbarity even to think of putting a lady to a cruel and shameful death for so venial and amiable a transgression.

LORD MACAULAY.

com-mis'sion

the'a-tre

van'quished

re-cog-nised'

in-sur-rec'tion

ac'ces-sor-y

ju-ris-pru'dence

e-rad'i-cate

le'ni-ent

vic-to'ri-ous

gen-er-os'i-ty

ve'ni-al

Par.

1. theatre of war, scenes of war.
- „ Nonconformist, not belonging to the Established Church.
3. cavaliers, Royalists, opponents of the Puritans.
6. capital, liable to the punishment of death.
- „ accessory, one who assists in a crime.
- „ jurisprudence, system of law.
7. jurists, authorities on law.
9. eradicate, root out.
10. sanction, approve of.

Par.

10. connive at, allow to pass.
11. attainted, condemned by law, outlawed.
- „ heir of the Stuarts, Prince Charles Edward, the young Pretender.
- „ Lavalette, a supporter of Napoleon who was condemned to death by the French Courts in 1815. He was assisted to escape by Sir R. Wilson.
- „ casuists, people who profess

same definition, and visits with the same penalty, offences lying at the opposite extremes of the scale of guilt.

9. The feeling which makes the most loyal subject shrink from the thought of giving up to a shameful death the rebel who, vanquished, hunted down, and in mortal agony, begs for a morsel of bread and a cup of water, may be a weakness; but it is surely a weakness very nearly allied to virtue, a weakness which, constituted as human beings are, we can hardly eradicate from the mind without eradicating many noble and benevolent sentiments.

10. A wise and good ruler may not think it right to sanction this weakness; but he will generally connive at it, or punish it very tenderly. In no case will he treat it as a crime of the blackest dye.

11. Whether Flora Macdonald was justified in concealing the attainted heir of the Stuarts, whether a brave soldier of our own time was justified in assisting the escape of Lavalette, are questions on which casuists may differ; but to class such actions with the crimes of Guy Faux and Fieschi is an outrage to humanity and common-sense. Such, however, is the classification of our law.

12. It is evident that nothing but a lenient administration could make such a state of the law endurable. And it is just to say that, during many generations, no English government, save

34.—THE TRIAL OF ALICE LISLE.

PART II.

1. Odious as the law was, it was strained for the purpose of destroying Alice Lisle. She could not, according to the doctrine laid down by the highest authority, be convicted until after the conviction of the rebels whom she had harboured. She was, however, set to the bar before either Hickes or Nelthorpe had been tried.

2. It was no easy matter in such a case to obtain a verdict for the crown. The witnesses prevaricated. The jury, consisting of the principal gentlemen of Hampshire, shrank from the thought of sending a fellow creature to the stake for conduct which seemed deserving rather of praise than of blame.

3. Jeffreys was beside himself with fury. This was the first case of treason on the circuit; and there seemed to be a strong probability that his prey would escape him. He stormed, cursed, and swore in language which no well-bred man would have used at a race or a cock-fight.

4. One witness named Dunne, partly from concern for Lady Alice, and partly from fright at the threats and maledictions of the Chief Justice, entirely lost his head, and at last stood silent. "Oh, how hard the truth is," said Jeffreys, "to come out of a lying Puritan knave."

5. The witness, after a pause of some minutes,

- Par. to classify actions exactly as right or wrong.
11. Faux, usually Fawkes.
- „ Fieschi (Fe-es'-kee), a Corsican who tried to murder Louis Philippe, King of the French, by means of a bomb

- Par. or "infernal machine," in 1835.
12. lenient, gentle.
- „ insurgents, rebels.
- „ tacit, silent, unexpressed.
13. adroitness, skill.
- „ venial, pardonable.

Derivations, etc.

- Par.
1. Winchester, the *coaster* (Lat. *castra*, a camp), or Roman town, of the Gwent or open plain. Give examples of similar town-names.
- „ chief from Lat. *caput*, the head, through French *chef*.
- „ theatre, from Greek *theaomai*, I see; a theatre was at first a place for seeing public games.
2. lord, from Old English *hlaford*, the keeper of the loaf, that is, the head of the house.
- „ government, from Latin *gubernare*, I steer.
- „ lady, from Old English *hlafdige*, the kneader of the loaf.

- Par.
4. kindness, from *cyn* or *kin*, family. To be kind to a person was to treat him as if he were of one's family.
5. chimney, from Lat. and Gr. *caminus*, a furnace, through Fr. *cheminée*.
6. crime, from Latin *crimen*, a crime.
9. eradicate, from Lat. *e*, out of, *radix* (*radic-is*), a root. To pluck out by the roots.
12. charms, from Lat. *carmen*, a song; hence a witch's song or spell, hence something that has power over one, hence anything pleasing.
13. civil, from Lat. *civis*, a citizen.

Oral Exercises.

- How did the Lady Alice make herself liable to the penalty of treason?
- Explain the peculiarity of the English law of treason.
- What has been the practice of English governments in dealing with those who have given help to fleeing rebels?

Composition.

Write an essay on (a) "Compassion," or
(b) "The Duty of Obedience to the Law."

himself because warrants were out against him for field preaching.

9. The Chief Justice began to storm. "But I will tell you. There is not one of those lying, snivelling, canting Puritans but, one way or another, had a hand in the rebellion. Puritanism has all manner of villainy in it. Nothing but Puritanism could have made Dunne such a rogue. Show me a Puritan; and I'll show thee a lying knave."

10. He summed up in the same style, declaimed during an hour against Whigs and Dissenters, and reminded the jury that the prisoner's husband had borne a part in the death of Charles the First, a fact which had not been proved by any testimony, and which, if it had been proved, would have been utterly irrelevant to the issue.

11. The jury retired, and remained long in consultation. The judge grew impatient. He could not conceive, he said, how, in so plain a case, they should even have left the box. He sent a messenger to tell them that, if they did not instantly return, he would adjourn the court and lock them up all night.

12. Thus put to the torture, they came, but came to say that they doubted whether the charge had been made out. Jeffreys expostulated with them vehemently, and, after another consultation, they gave a reluctant verdict of Guilty.

13. On the following morning sentence was

stammered a few unmeaning words. "Was there ever," exclaimed the judge, "was there ever such a villain on the face of the earth? Of all the witnesses that I ever met with, I never saw thy fellow."

6. Still the poor man, scared out of his senses, remained mute; and again Jeffreys burst forth. "I hope, gentlemen of the jury, that you take notice of the horrible carriage of this fellow. How can one help abhorring both these men and their religion? A Turk is a saint to such a fellow as this. A Pagan would be ashamed of such villainy. What a generation of vipers do we live among."

7. "I cannot tell what to say, my lord," faltered Dunne. The judge again broke forth. "Was there ever," he cried, "such an impudent rascal? Hold the candle to him that we may see his brazen face. You, gentlemen, that are of counsel for the crown, see that an information for perjury be preferred against this fellow."

8. After the witnesses had been thus handled, the Lady Alice was called on for her defence. She began by saying, what may possibly have been true, that, though she knew Hickes to be in trouble when she took him in, she did not know or suspect that he had been concerned in the rebellion. He was a divine, a man of peace. It had, therefore, never occurred to her that he could have borne arms against the government; and she had supposed that he wished to conceal

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>Par.
8. a divine, a minister of religion.
10. summed up, addressed the jury on the case.
,, Dissenters, name applied in England to those who do</p> | <p>Par
not belong to the Established Church.
10. irrelevant to the issue, without bearing on the case.
12. vehemently, violently.
,, expostulated, remonstrated.</p> |
|--|--|

Derivations, etc.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>Par.
2. prevaricated, from Lat. <i>prae</i>, before, <i>varius</i>, bent. To prevaricate is to <i>bend</i> or <i>twist</i> the truth.
,, principal, from Lat. <i>primus</i>, first, <i>cipio</i>, I take.
,, gentle, from Lat. <i>gens</i> (<i>gentis</i>), a family or clan. To be gentle was to belong to a good family.
,, blame, from Lat. <i>blasphemo</i>, I blaspheme.
4. truth, from <i>trou</i>, to believe. "Truth" was thus originally what one believed; now it is used to denote what is actually correct or right.
5. villain, from Lat. <i>villa</i>, a country house, hence a servant of a country house. See next note.
6. pagan, from Lat. <i>pagus</i>, a village. A <i>pagan</i> was originally a villager. Such words as villain, pagan, churl, and knave came to</p> | <p>Par.
have their modern bad meaning because town-dwellers and people in the higher ranks looked down on country people and servants.
8. preach, from Lat. <i>praedico</i>, I speak out, through Fr. <i>prêcher</i>, to preach.
,, canting, from Lat. <i>cantus</i>, a song. Hence applied to the whine of a beggar, and so to any insincere or hypocritical way of speaking.
9. knave, originally a <i>boy</i>, a <i>servant</i>.
13. indignation, from Lat. <i>in</i>, not, <i>dignus</i>, worthy. Indignation is anger at unworthy or mean conduct.
,, cathedral, from Greek <i>cathedra</i>, a throne. A cathedral church is the chief church of a diocese, where the bishop has his throne or seat of state.</p> |
|---|--|

Oral Exercises.

1. Show that Alice Lisle was illegally convicted.
2. Describe Jeffreys' treatment of Dunne.
3. Explain in your own words why it was wrong on the part of Judge Jeffreys to tell the jury that Alice Lisle's husband had a share in the death of Charles the First.

Composition.

Write an essay on "The British Constitution."

2. The Highlanders poured on with the proverbial fury of their country, firing their guns, and discharging their arrows, at a little distance from the enemy, who received the assault with the most determined gallantry. Better provided with musketry than their enemies, stationary also, and therefore taking the more decisive aim, the fire of Argyle's followers was more destructive than that which they sustained.

3. The Royal clans, perceiving this, rushed to close quarters, and succeeded on two points in throwing their enemies into disorder. With regular troops this must have achieved a victory; but here Highlanders were opposed to Highlanders, and the nature of the weapons, as well as the agility of those who wielded them, was equal on both sides.

4. Their strife was accordingly desperate; and the clash of the swords and axes, as they encountered each other, or rung upon the targets, was mingled with the short, wild, animating shrieks with which Highlanders accompany the battle, the dance, or indeed violent exertion of any kind. Many of the foes opposed were personally acquainted, and sought to match themselves with each other from motives of hatred, or a more generous emulation of valour.

5. Neither party would retreat an inch, while the place of those who fell (and they fell fast on both sides) was eagerly supplied by others, who thronged to the front of danger. A steam, like



35.—THE BATTLE OF INVERLOCHY.

[In the year 1644 the Marquis of Montrose raised a Highland army to fight for King Charles I , whose party at that time seemed entirely overwhelmed in Scotland For a time he was very successful, and the following extract from "The Legend of Montrose" is Scott's description of the Battle of Inverlochy which Montrose fought in 1645 against the Marquis of Argyle.]

1. The trumpets and bagpipes, those clamorous harbingers of blood and death, at once united in the signal for onset, which was replied to by the cry of more than two thousand warriors, and the echoes of the mountain glens behind them. Divided into three bodies or columns, the Highland followers of Montrose poured from the defiles which had hitherto concealed them from their enemies, and rushed with the utmost determination upon the Campbells, who waited their charge with the greatest firmness.

right flank and even the rear of the enemy, he commanded his six trumpets to sound the charge.

10. The clang of the cavalry trumpets, and the



INVERLOCHY

noise of the galloping of the horse, produced an effect upon Argyle's right wing which no other sounds could have impressed them with. The mountaineers of that period had a superstitious dread of the war-horse, like that entertained by the Peruvians, and had many strange ideas

that which arises from a seething cauldron, rose into the thin, cold, frosty air, and hovered above the combatants.

6. So stood the fight on the right and the centre, with no immediate consequence, except mutual wounds and death.

7. On the right of the Campbells, the Knight of Ardenvohr obtained some advantage, through his military skill and by strength of numbers. He had moved forward obliquely the extreme flank of his line at the instant the Royalists were about to close, so that they sustained a fire at once on front and in flank, and, despite the utmost efforts of their leader, were thrown into some confusion.

8. At this instant, Sir Duncan Campbell gave the word to charge, and thus unexpectedly made the attack at the very moment he seemed about to receive it. Such a change of circumstances is always discouraging, and often fatal. But the disorder was remedied by the advance of the Irish reserve, whose heavy and sustained fire compelled the Knight of Ardenvohr to forego his advantage, and content himself with repulsing the enemy.

9. The Marquis of Montrose, in the meanwhile, availing himself of some scattered birch-trees as well as of the smoke produced by the close fire of the Irish musketry, which concealed the operation, called upon Dalgetty to follow him with the horse, and, wheeling round so as to gain the

the tumultuary retreat of the common file. Their resolution only proved fatal to themselves, as they were charged again and again by fresh adversaries, and forced to separate from each other, until at length their aim seemed only to be to purchase an honourable death by resisting to the very last.

(From "*A Legend of Montrose*," by SIR WALTER SCOTT.)

clam'or-ous	a-chieved'	ir-rep'ar-a-ble
harb'in-gers	cir'-cum-stan-ces	tu-mul'tu-ary
de-ter-mi-na'tion	su-per-sti'tious	ad-ver-sa-ries
sta-tion-a-ry	im-pen'e-tra-ble	hon'our-a-ble

Par.

1. harbingers, foretellers, prophets.
7. the Knight of Ardenvohr, Sir Duncan Campbell of Ardenvohr, an imaginary character introduced by Sir Walter Scott.
9. Dalgetty, an experienced

Par.

- soldier of fortune who had taken service under Montrose.
11. caracole, leap and prance.
12. Auchenbreck, Sir Duncan Campbell of Auchenbreck, an historical character.

Derivations, etc.

Par.

1. harbinger, from Old English *herbergeour*, a person who preceded a king or other great person to obtain quarters (*herbor* or *harbour*) for him; hence any one who goes in advance. The *n* has been introduced for ease in pronunciation; as in messenger (for *messager*).
4. desperate, from Latin *de*, down, *spero*, I hope.

Par.

4. motives, from Latin *moveo* (*mot-um*), I move; that which *moves* a man to do anything.
5. eager, from Lat. *acer*, sharp, alert.
6. centre, from Greek *centron*, a bee's sting; hence a small point, and so its present meaning.
8. fatal, from Latin *fatum*, fate.

Oral Exercises.

1. Describe Montrose's order of attack.
2. How did Ardenvohr gain an advantage over the Royalists?
3. Describe the effect of Dalgetty's charge.

Composition.

Write an essay on "War."

respecting the manner in which that animal was trained to combat.

11. When, therefore, they found their ranks unexpectedly broken, and that the objects of their greatest terror were suddenly in the midst of them, the panic, in spite of Sir Duncan's attempts to stop it, became universal. Indeed, the figure of Major Dalgetty alone, sheathed in impenetrable armour, and making his horse caracole and bound so as to give weight to every blow which he struck, would have been a novelty in itself sufficient to terrify those who had never seen anything more nearly resembling such a cavalier, than a *shelty* waddling under a Highlander far bigger than itself.

12. The repulsed Royalists returned to the charge; the Irish, keeping their ranks, maintained a fire equally close and destructive. There was no sustaining the fight longer. Argyle's followers began to break and fly, most towards the lake, the remainder in different directions. The defeat of the right wing, of itself decisive, was rendered irreparable by the death of Auchencbreck, who fell while endeavouring to restore order.

13. The Knight of Ardenvoehr, with two or three hundred men, all gentlemen of descent and distinguished gallantry,—for the Campbells are supposed to have had more gentlemen in their ranks than any of the Highland clans,—endeavoured with unavailing heroism to cover

And the tall Pinta, till the noon, had held her
close in chase.

Forthwith a guard at every gun was placed
along the wall;

The beacon blazed upon the roof of Edgecumbe's
lofty hall;

4. Many a light fishing bark put out to pry along
the coast,

And with loose rein and bloody spur rode
inland many a post.

With his white hair unbonneted, the stout old
sheriff comes;

Behind him march the halberdiers; before him
sound the drums;



5. His yeomen round the market cross make clear
an ample space;

For there behoves him to set up the standard
of Her Grace.



CLOSE IN CHASE.

36.—THE ARMADA.

1. Attend, all ye who list to hear our noble
England's praise;
I tell of the thrice-famous deeds she wrought
in ancient days,
When that great fleet invincible against her
bore in vain
The richest spoils of Mexico, the stoutest
hearts of Spain.
2. It was about the lovely close of a warm
summer day,
There came a gallant merchant-ship full sail to
Plymouth Bay;
Her crew had seen Castile's black fleet, beyond
Aurigny's Isle,
At earliest twilight, on the waves, lie heaving
many a mile.
3. At sunrise she escaped their van, by God's
especial grace;

9. Night sank upon the dusky beach, and on the
purple sea,
Such night in England ne'er had been, nor e'er
again shall be.
From Eddystone to Berwick bounds, from
Lynn to Milford Bay,
That time of slumber was as bright and busy
as the day;
10. For swift to east and swift to west the ghastly
war-flame spread,
High on St Michael's Mount it shone; it shone
on Beachy Head.
Far o'er the deep the Spaniards saw, along
each southern shire,
Cape beyond cape, in endless range, those
twinkling points of fire.
11. The fisher left his skiff to rock on Tamar's
glittering waves:
The rugged miners poured to war from
Mendip's sunless caves:
O'er Longleat's towers, o'er Cranbourne's oaks,
the fiery herald flew:
He roused the shepherds of Stonehenge, the
rangers of Beaulieu.
12. Right sharp and quick the bells all night rang
out from Bristol town,
And ere the day three hundred horse had met
on Clifton Down;

And haughtily the trumpets peal and gaily
dance the bells,
As slow upon the labouring wind the royal
blazon swells.

6. Look how the Lion of the sea lifts up his
ancient crown,
And underneath his deadly paw treads the
gay lilies down.
So stalked he when he turned to flight, on
that famed Picard field,
Bohemia's plume, and Genoa's bow, and Cæsar's
eagle shield.

7. So glared he when at Agincourt in wrath he
turned to bay,
And crushed and torn beneath his claws the
princely hunters lay.
Ho! strike the flagstaff deep, Sir Knight:
ho! scatter flowers, fair maids:
Ho! gunners, fire a loud salute: ho! gallants,
draw your blades.

8. Thou sun, shine on her joyously; ye breezes,
waft her wide;
Our glorious SEMPER EADEM, the banner of
our pride.
The freshening breeze of eve unfurled that
banner's massy fold;
The parting gleam of sunshine kissed that
haughty scroll of gold;

-
15. And broader still became the blaze, and louder
still the din,
And fast from every village round the horse
came spurring in :
And eastward straight from wild Blackheath
the war-like errand went,
And roused in many an ancient hall the
gallant squires of Kent.
16. Southward from Surrey's pleasant hills flew
those bright couriers forth ;
High on bleak Hampstead's swarthy moor
they started for the north ;
And on, and on, without a pause, untired they
bounded still :
All night from tower to tower they sprang ;
they sprang from hill to hill :
17. Till the proud Peak unfurled the flag o'er
Darwin's rocky dales,
Till like volcanoes flared to heaven the stormy
hills of Wales.
Till twelve fair counties saw the blaze on
Malvern's lonely height,
Till streamed in crimson on the wind the
Wrekin's crest of light.
18. Till broad and fierce the star came forth on
Ely's stately fane,
And tower and hamlet rose in arms o'er all
the boundless plain :

The sentinel on Whitehall gate looked forth
into the night,
And saw o'erhanging Richmond Hill the streak
of blood-red light;

13. Then bugle's note and cannon's roar the death-
like silence broke,
And with one start and with one cry, the
royal city woke.
At once on all her stately gates arose the
answering fires;
At once the wild alarum clashed from all her
reeling spires;



14. From all the batteries of the Tower pealed
loud the voice of fear;
And all the thousand masts of Thames sent
back a louder cheer;
And from the furthest wards was heard the
rush of hurrying feet,
And the broad streams of pikes and flags
rushed down each roaring street:

-
15. And broader still became the blaze, and louder
still the din,
And fast from every village round the horse
came spurring in :
And eastward straight from wild Blackheath
the war-like errand went,
And roused in many an ancient hall the
gallant squires of Kent.
16. Southward from Surrey's pleasant hills flew
those bright couriers forth ;
High on bleak Hampstead's swarthy moor
they started for the north ;
And on, and on, without a pause, untired they
bounded still :
All night from tower to tower they sprang ;
they sprang from hill to hill :
17. Till the proud Peak unfurled the flag o'er
Darwin's rocky dales,
Till like volcanoes flared to heaven the stormy
hills of Wales.
Till twelve fair counties saw the blaze on
Malvern's lonely height,
Till streamed in crimson on the wind the
Wrekin's crest of light.
18. Till broad and fierce the star came forth on
Ely's stately fane,
And tower and hamlet rose in arms o'er all
the boundless plain :

The sentinel on Whitehall gate looked forth
into the night,
And saw o'erhanging Richmond Hill the streak
of blood-red light;

13. Then bugle's note and cannon's roar the death-
like silence broke,
And with one start and with one cry, the
royal city woke.
At once on all her stately gates arose the
answering fires;
At once the wild alarum clashed from all her
reeling spires;



14. From all the batteries of the Tower pealed
loud the voice of fear;
And all the thousand masts of Thames sent
back a louder cheer;
And from the furthest wards was heard the
rush of hurrying feet,
And the broad streams of pikes and flags
rushed down each roaring street:

Ver.

1. that great fleet invincible.
The Spaniards called their fleet "the *Invincible Armada*" because they thought it could not possibly be beaten.

„ the richest spoils of Mexico, the wealth Spain got from her American possessions.

2. Aurigny's Isle, Alderney, one of the Channel Islands.

„ lie heaving many a mile.

The Armada advanced in the form of a crescent, seven miles from horn to horn.

3. Edgecumbe's lofty hall, a mansion near Plymouth.

5. behoves him, he must.

„ the standard of Her Grace, Queen Elizabeth's flag.

„ blazon, device.

6. the Lion of the sea. The English Royal Standard had three lions on it.

„ the gay lilies, the *fleurs-de-lis* or emblem of France.

„ that famed Picard field, Crecy in Picardy, where the English defeated the French in 1346.

„ Bohemia's plume. At the Battle of Crecy the blind King of Bohemia, who had three ostrich feathers as his emblem, fought and was slain in the French army. The Prince of Wales, who commanded the English, took three feathers as his device.

„ Genoa's bow. A large force of Genoese bowmen was in the French army at Crecy.

6. Cæsar's eagle shield. The Emperor Charles IV. fought in the French army at Crecy. The Emperors claimed to be the successors

Ver.

of the Cæsars, or Roman Emperors, and their device was an eagle.

7. at Agincourt in wrath he turned to bay. At Agincourt, fought in 1415, the French thought that they had driven the English into a corner, but they were themselves defeated with great slaughter.

8. our glorious SEMPER EADEM, the royal banner. "Semper eadem," "always the same," was the motto of the Popes. Macaulay here chooses it to show the strength and steadfastness of the English Kingdom.

9. as bright and busy as the day, with the lighting of the beacons to warn the people.

10. St. Michael's Mount, an island in Mount's Bay in Cornwall.

11. Longleat, in Wiltshire, the seat of the Marquis of Bath.

„ Cranbourne, in Dorsetshire.

„ Beaulieu (pronounced Bewley), in Hampshire, near the New Forest.

13. the royal city, London.

16. Hampstead's swarthy moor, Hampstead Heath, north-west of London.

17. the proud Peak, the mountain district of North Derbyshire.

18. fane, temple or church; here Ely Cathedral.

„ Belvoir (pronounced Bevor), the seat of the Duke of Rutland, in Leicestershire, seven miles from Grantham.

„ Gaunt's embattled pile, the Castle of Lancaster, once the property of John of Gaunt.

„ embattled pile, house or castle with battlements.



THE ALARM (LIGHTING THE BEACON).

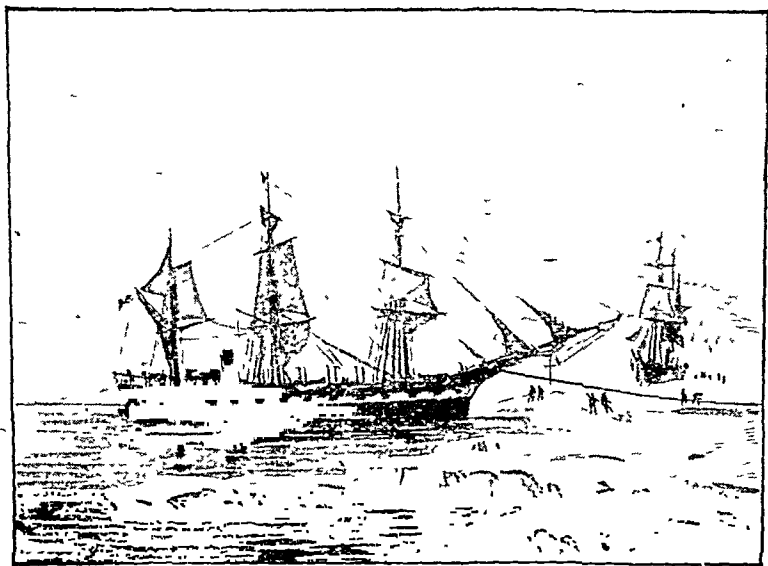
Till Belvoir's lordly terraces the sign to
 Lincoln sent,
 And Lincoln sped the message on o'er the wide
 vale of Trent;
 Till Skiddaw saw the fire that burned on
 Gaunt's embattled pile,
 And the red glare on Skiddaw roused the
 burghers of Carlisle.

LORD MACAULAY.

an'-cient
 in-vin'-ci-ble

sher'-iff
 hal'-berd-iers

blaz'-on
 bat'-ter-ies



37.—THE SHETLAND ISLANDS AND THE WHALE FISHERIES.

PART I.

1. The first whale hunters mentioned in history were the Norwegians, whose hunting grounds were from the Naze around the North Cape to the White Sea, and the Biscayans, who carried on the pursuit around their own shores. As soon as the discovery was made that the whale was a marketable commodity, the Icelanders, the Basques, and the Biscayans fitted out ships for hunting it in the Northern and Atlantic Oceans, and so successful were they that the enterprise of the merchants of England was aroused, and about 1575, a small fleet of whalers were sent out from Bristol to Cape Breton.

Derivations, etc.

Ver.

1. Armada, from Latin *arma*, arms.
,, fleet, connected with *float*.
2. Castile (Spanish *Castilla*), so called from the number of castles (Spanish *castillos*) built by the Spaniards when they won the country back from the Moors.
4. post, from Latin *pono* (*positum*), I place. A post meant a station or place where horses were changed; then it was applied to the mounted messengers who carried letters from one post to the next; now it is used of the whole system of transmitting letters from town to town, though there are now in this country *no posts* in the original sense.

Ver.

4. sheriff, from old English *scir-gerefa*, the King's deputy for the *scir* or shire. The Scottish word *grieve*, a farm steward or bailiff, is derived from *gerefa*.
5. haughtily, from Latin *altus*, high, through French *haut*.
8. waft, connected with *wave*, as *drift* with *drive*.
11. skiff, another form of *ship*.
14. ward, another form of *guard*.
15. errand, from Latin *erro*, I wander.
16. couriers, from Latin *curro*, I run.
18. terrace, from Latin *terra*, the earth.
- ,, message, from Latin *mitto* (*missum*), I send.

Oral Exercises.

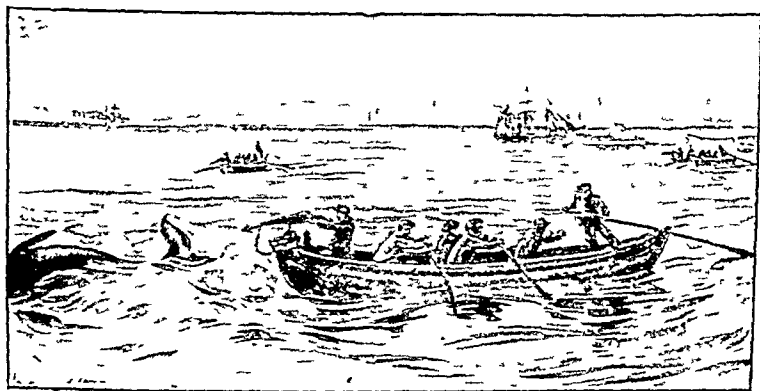
1. How was news of the approach of the Armada brought to Plymouth?
2. Describe the setting up of the Queen's Standard.
3. Tell how the country was roused.

Composition.

Write an essay on "Freedom."

the trade was transferred to Scotland. Hull had fifty-three ships on the fishing ground when the century opened, and the last Hull ship was sent out in 1869. About forty years ago, fifty ships were sent out from Scottish ports, but as the time wore on they all withdrew, except Dundee.

7. When the first whaler arrived at Lerwick to engage men to complete her crew is not known. Bressay Sound had for long been frequented by the fishing fleets of Holland, and it is probable



CHASING THE WHALE.

that Dutch ships were the first to engage Shetland men.

8. In 1670, the town of Lerwick consisted of four houses. Some change of an attractive nature must have taken place in the following thirty years because in 1700 the population was estimated at not less than 300 persons. In those years, the

2. A Russian company of English merchants discovered Jan Mayen and Spitzbergen, and established a whaling station there, which in a few years became so lucrative that the Hull merchants joined them with a fleet, and both companies united in claiming a monopoly of the whale fishing in the northern seas. One year they drove home the Dutch and the Biscayan ships without allowing them to lower a boat.

3. Three years later, sixteen Dutch and four English ships appeared at Spitzbergen, and at the close of the season they were attacked by seven armed vessels belonging to the Russian company, relieved of their cargoes, and sent home empty.

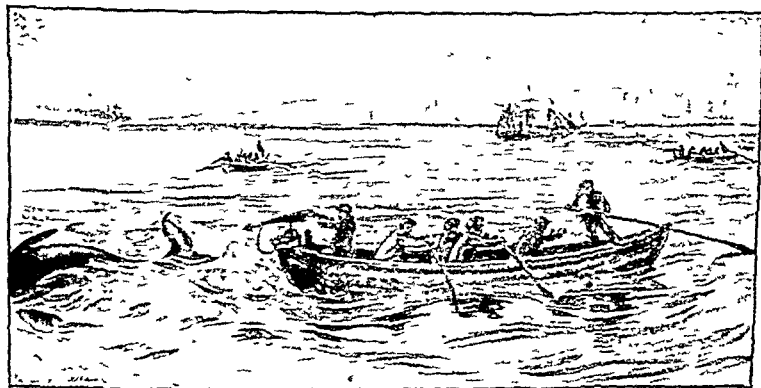
4. In the early half of last century the enterprise declined both in England and Holland. Several attempts were made in England to revive it, but all proved unsuccessful. When it became known that Davis Straits was a favourite haunt of the whale, the British Government offered a bounty of £1 per ton, which in 1749 was increased to £2.

5. A newly-formed company then equipped a fleet of ninety-eight ships, and Scottish towns sent out thirty-one vessels. The number increased yearly, and in 1788, when the bounty was withdrawn, the British whaling fleet numbered 255 ships, and the country had paid in bounties £1,266,431.

6. The English seaports withdrew during the first half of the current century, except Hull, and

the trade was transferred to Scotland. Hull had fifty-three ships on the fishing ground when the century opened, and the last Hull ship was sent out in 1869. About forty years ago, fifty ships were sent out from Scottish ports, but as the time wore on they all withdrew, except Dundee.

7. When the first whaler arrived at Lerwick to engage men to complete her crew is not known. Bressay Sound had for long been frequented by the fishing fleets of Holland, and it is probable



CHASING THE WHALE.

that Dutch ships were the first to engage Shetland men.

8. In 1670, the town of Lerwick consisted of four houses. Some change of an attractive nature must have taken place in the following thirty years because in 1700 the population was estimated at not less than 300 persons. In those years, the

2. A Russian company of English merchants discovered Jan Mayen and Spitzbergen, and established a whaling station there, which in a few years became so lucrative that the Hull merchants joined them with a fleet, and both companies united in claiming a monopoly of the whale fishing in the northern seas. One year they drove home the Dutch and the Biscayan ships without allowing them to lower a boat.

3. Three years later, sixteen Dutch and four English ships appeared at Spitzbergen, and at the close of the season they were attacked by seven armed vessels belonging to the Russian company, relieved of their cargoes, and sent home empty.

4. In the early half of last century the enterprise declined both in England and Holland. Several attempts were made in England to revive it, but all proved unsuccessful. When it became known that Davis Straits was a favourite haunt of the whale, the British Government offered a bounty of £1 per ton, which in 1749 was increased to £2.

5. A newly-formed company then equipped a fleet of ninety-eight ships, and Scottish towns sent out thirty-one vessels. The number increased yearly, and in 1788, when the bounty was withdrawn, the British whaling fleet numbered 255 ships, and the country had paid in bounties £1,266,431.

6. The English seaports withdrew during the first half of the current century, except Hull, and

com-mod-i-ty
lu'-cra-tive
mon-op'o-ly

pop-u-la'tion
es'ti-ma-ted
zen'ith

char-ac-ter-ist'ics
sat-is-fac'to-ry
prac'tice

Par.

1. Biscayans, from the north of Spain, close to the western end of the Pyrenees.

„ commodity, something that can be exchanged or sold.

„ Basques, neighbours of the Biscayans, living in France and Spain at the S.E. angle of the Bay of Biscay. They speak a language different from all other European tongues.

2. a Russian company of English merchants, that is a company formed in Russia and under Russian laws,

Par.

the members of which were Englishmen.

2. Jan Mayen, island between Norway and Iceland.

„ Spitzbergen, group of islands north of Russia

„ lucrative, profitable.

„ monopoly, sole right to use.

4. bounty, grant or payment made by government to encourage trade. Bounties are now believed to be hurtful.

8. zenith, highest point. The *zenith* is the point of the heavens immediately over our head.

Derivations, etc.

Par.

1. Naze, that is, the *Nose*, or projecting piece of land. Give other examples of names similarly derived.

„ enterprise, from French *entrepris*, undertaken; Latin *inter*, between, *prendo* (*præsum*), taken.

2. monopoly, from Greek *monos*, alone, *polco*, I sell.

5. numbered, from Latin *numerus*, a number. The letter *b* has been inserted to make the word more easily sounded. Other words in which this letter

Par.

has been introduced are *humble*, *tremble*. Give other examples.

6. current century, from Latin *curro*, I run, the present century, that century which is *running* on.

9. flourished, from Lat. *flos* (*floris*), a flower.

„ frankness, from the name of the Franks, the German conquerors of Gaul, who prided themselves on being *free* and open in their conduct.

Oral Exercises.

1. Name the nations that first took part in the whale fisheries.
2. How did the prosperity of Lerwick begin?
3. How did the Shetlanders regard English and Scottish whalers respectively?

Composition.

Write an essay on "The Sea."

Dutch whaling fleet was at the zenith of its prosperity, suitable men were in demand, and it is more than likely that they put in to Bressay Sound in search of hands.

9. There was no other known cause. The place itself had no attractive features. British ships came later, and maintained the demand which had been created for whale fishers. English ships and crews were from the first popular in Shetland. An Englishman flourished in all the stories told by the old whale fishers. His leading characteristics were fearlessness, frankness, and fairplay, and English ships continued popular to the last.

10. The men themselves could give no satisfactory reason for the manner in which they acted, but it often happened that when the crew of a Scottish ship chanced to comprise equal numbers of Scotsmen and Shetlanders, the first day after leaving Bressay Sound was devoted to fighting for victory. Both sides were eager for the fray, and the side that gained held sway during the voyage.

11. The Shetland part of the crew generally selected a Yell or Fetlar man as their leader, and the names of some of those men became household words. They must have had considerable practice, as nearly all the old whale fishers were first-rate boxers. Such scenes never occurred on board English ships.

(Adapted from the "Scotsman," by permission.)

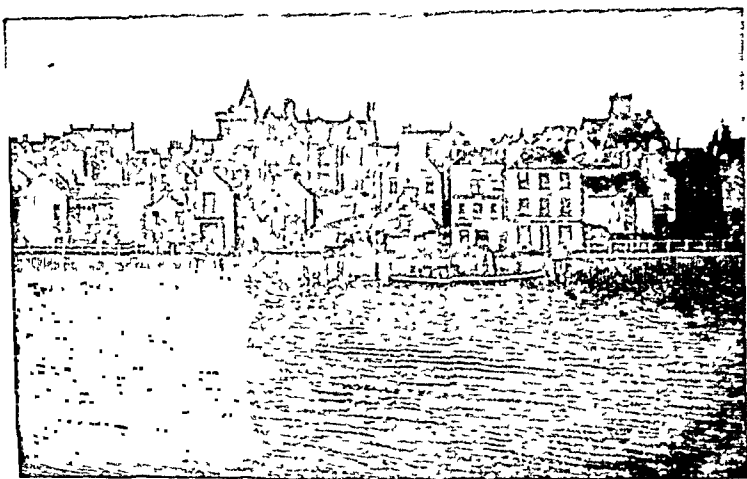
and only a few rose to the command of a whaler. Numbers of them shipped as harpooners, boat steerers, and line coilers, and if a good cup reader was found among them who could foretell the number of whales to be caught, he was held in high esteem.

3. One case of a Shetlander in command of a whaler has been handed down. Continental privateers were so numerous in the northern seas that a convoy was required as a protection to the fleet on the voyage out and home, and also on the fishing grounds. One year the fleet sailed from Lerwick without a convoy, after making arrangements that they should keep together, as closely as possible, and unite in self-defence in case of an attack.

4. In June, when the vessels were scattered in search of whales, a signal of alarm was one day given by the ships in the offing, and as soon as possible a union was effected. A foreign man-of-war had been descried in the distance.

5. A Council of War was held, and it was agreed to engage the enemy with their united forces. The fleet in order of battle bore down on the foe, who, believing from their appearance and determination that they were under the protection of a strong convoy, first hesitated, and then took to flight.

6. The fastest ships of the fleet pursued him, and at last the 'Mary Ann,' commanded by Olav Olavson, a Shetlander, drew ahead of her com



LERWICK.

38.—SHETLAND AND THE WHALE FISHERIES.

PART II.

1. The whaling ships were rigged out before leaving port, so that little of what is called "bosen's work" had to be done. The work required was to "reef, haul, and steer," and catch whales, and as Shetlanders were quick to learn the necessary sailor work, it often happened that whaling captains took no more men from home with them than were necessary to work the ship to Lerwick. Another inducement was that men could be engaged in Lerwick at lower wages than in the south, and to shipowners that was a matter of some importance.

2. As the men were engaged and landed at Lerwick, the owners knew nothing about them,

Captain Olavson, at the same time sending a cannon ball towards him.

8. The Frenchman, helpless from the loss of his guns, surrendered, his crew was distributed among the whalers, a prize crew put on board the privateer, and eight days afterwards Captain Olavson anchored her in Bressay Sound.

9. Often upwards of 2000 men have left Lerwick in a season for the whaling grounds. They were paid monthly wages, and they participated in the profits of the fishing. Their wages were low, but if they were so fortunate as to return with a full ship, their whale money amounted to a respectable sum.

10. At first the men had a guinea each for every 'size fish'—a whale with twelve feet in length of whalebone in its mouth. Measurements were exact, and for all whales under that size the crew received nothing. Under-sized fish formed a large part of the catch, or cargo, and as the men had the risk of capture, and the toil, much dissatisfaction was created.

11. A change was at last made, and the men were paid by the tun of oil. This plan gave satisfaction, and many of the men had respectable deposits in bank or with their agents or landlords.

12. The capture of whales demanded the utmost care and skill on the part of the harpooner and his crews. The lines had to be coiled, so that they could run out easily and clearly without the

panions, and went on alone. The Frenchman, for so he proved to be, seeing that his solitary pursuer was gaining on him, thought that he must be a British man-of-war of superior calibre to himself, and at once, to lighten his ship and increase his speed, threw his guns overboard.



WATCHING FOR A CHANCE.

7. For a while he more than held his own, but a change of wind favoured the whaler, and by using every stitch of canvas to the best advantage, she overhauled the enemy. When within speaking distance, the privateer was ordered to strike her colours. "To whom," demanded the Frenchman. "To the whale ship, the 'Mary Ann' of Hull; strike, or I shall send you to the bottom," replied

of the harpooners or boat steerers caused the loss of the fish—a loss which both captain and crew resented. Successful whale fishers required to be men of both nerve and skill and muscular force.

14. The services the whale fishing rendered to Shetland cannot be over-estimated. It abolished the fishing tenure and emancipated the people from a form of slavery. It formed an outlet for the energies of the male population, gave scope to their seafaring instincts, brought yearly a large sum of money into the country, and improved the circumstances of thousands of families.

15. Above all it created the town of Lerwick, which has ever since been the headquarters of the trade of Shetland, the emporium of its industries, and the successor of its ancient Lawting. It chanced most fortunately that when the whale fishing began to decline, the attention of the men had been drawn to the seaports of the south, and the failure of the whaling industry has not been felt in Shetland.

(Adapted from the "Scotsman," by permission.)

pri'va-teers
de-scried'
hes'i-ta-ted
cal'i-bre

dis-trib'u-ted
par-ti-ci-pa-ted
re-spect'a-ble
dis-sat-is-fac'tion

vul'ner-a-ble
mus'cu-lar
e-man'ci-pa-ted
em-po'ri-um

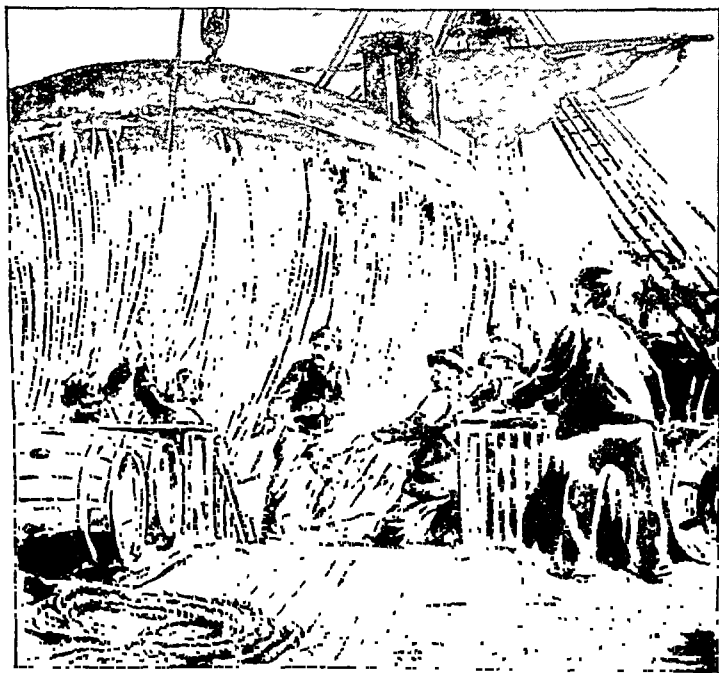
Par.

1. "bosen's work," boatswain's work, putting sails and ropes into a proper state.
2. cup reader, one who pretends to foretell events from inspection of the grounds in a tea-cup.

Par.

- 3 privateers, armed vessels fitted out by private persons to attack the commerce of an enemy.
3. convoy, guard of one or more warships.
6. superior calibre, greater

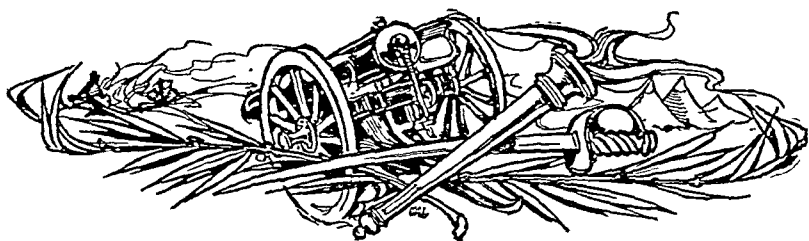
smallest twist or hitch. The boat had to be brought close to the most vulnerable part of the animal's body without making it aware of the boat's approach. The harpoon had to be driven



ON BOARD A WHALER—THE WHALE'S JAW WITH THE
WHALEBONE.

in with such force as to prevent it withdrawing, and the crew had to be ready to back off the moment the whale received the harpoon, so as to escape the powerful lash of its tail, and the sudden plunge to the bottom which it made.

13. The least timidity or want of skill on the part



39.—THE BATTLE OF JENA.

[In 1806 the Emperor Napoleon defeated the Prussians in the two battles of Jena * and Auerstädt fought on the same day. The following account is supposed to be told by Tom Burke, an Irish officer in the French service.]

PART I.

1. As I stopped for time to recover breath, I could not help turning to behold the valley, which, now filled with armed men, was a grand and gorgeous sight. In long columns of attack they came; the artillery filling the interspaces between them. A brilliant sunlight shone out, and I could distinguish the different brigades, with whose colours I was now familiar.

2. Still my eye ranged over the field in search of cavalry, the arm I loved above all others, that which, more than all the rest, revived the heroic spirit of the chivalrous ages, and made the horseman feel the ancient ardour of the belted knight. But none were within sight. Indeed, the very nature of the ground offered an obstacle to their movement, and I saw that here, as at Austerlitz, the day was to the infantry.

3. Meanwhile we toiled up the height, and at length reached the crest of the ridge, and then

* Pronounced *Jaina*.

strength in guns. Calibre refers to the diameter of the gun tube.

Par.

12. vulnerable, open to attack.

15. Lawting, seat of the old Norse Parliament of Shetland.

Derivations, etc.

Par.

4. offing, from *off*; the part of the sea far off.

„ union, from Lat. *unus*, one.

„ foreign, from Lat. *foris*, out of doors; hence far off; hence applied to strangers.

10. guinea, so called because it was first made of gold brought from Guinea. Mention other pieces of money or materials, which received their names from place-names.

12. aware. Compare *beware*, *wary*.

Par.

14. emancipated, from Latin *c*, out of, and *manceps*, one who gives or receives property; applied to freed slaves as ceasing to be the property of their masters.

15. emporium, from Greek *em-poros*, a traveller or trader; hence a market place or centre of trade.

„ Lawting, from the Norse. A *ting* or *thing*, was a meeting. Compare *husting*.

Oral Exercises.

1. Why did whalers make up their crews from Shetland?
2. Narrate in your own words the story of Captain Olavson's capture.
3. What effect had the whale fisheries on Shetland?

Composition.

Write an essay on "The British Isles."

in the direction of some cottages, which I soon heard was the village of Vierzehn Heiligen, and the centre of the Prussian position. A galling fire of artillery played upon the column, as it went; and before we accomplished half the distance our loss was considerable.

8. More than once, too, the cry of "Cavalry!" was heard, and, quick as the warning itself, we were thrown into square, to receive the impetuous horsemen, who came madly on to the charge. Ney himself stood in the squares, animating by his presence the men, and cheering them at every volley they poured in.

9. "Yonder, men, yonder is the centre of their position," said he, pointing to the village, which now bristled with armed men, several guns upon a height beyond it, commanding the approach, and a cloud of cavalry hovering near, to pounce down upon those who might be daring enough to assail it. A wild cheer answered his words, both general and soldiers understood each other well.

10. In two columns of attack the division was formed, and then the word "Forward!" was given. "Orderly time, men," said General Dorsenne, who commanded that with which I was; and obedient to the order, the ranks moved as if on parade. And now let me mention a circumstance, which, though trivial in itself, presents a feature of the peculiar character of courage which distinguished the French officer in battle.

burst forth a sight such as all the grandeur I had ever beheld of war had never presented the equal. On a vast table-land, slightly undulating on the surface, was drawn up the whole Prussian army, in battle array—a splendid force of nigh thirty thousand infantry, flanked by ten thousand sabres, the finest cavalry in Europe.

4. It was now nine o'clock; the sky clear and cloudless, and a bright autumnal day permitted the eye to range for miles on every side. The Prussian army, but forty thousand strong, was drawn up in the form of an arch, presenting the convexity to our front, while our troops, ninety thousand in number, overlapped them on either flank, and extended far beyond them.

5. The battle began by the advance of the French columns, and the retreat of the enemy, both movements accomplished without a shot being fired, and the whole seeming the manœuvres of a field day.

6. At length, as the Prussians took the position they intended to hold, their guns were seen moving to the front, squadrons of cavalry disengaged themselves from behind the infantry masses, and then, a tremendous fire opened from the whole line. Our troops advanced *en tirailleurs*, that is, whole regiments thrown out in skirmishing order, which, when pressed, fell back, and permitted the columns to appear.

7. The division to which I found myself attached received orders to move obliquely across the plain,

in the direction of some cottages, which I soon heard was the village of Vierzehn Heiligen, and the centre of the Prussian position. A galling fire of artillery played upon the column, as it went; and before we accomplished half the distance our loss was considerable.

8. More than once, too, the cry of "Cavalry!" was heard, and, quick as the warning itself, we were thrown into square, to receive the impetuous horsemen, who came madly on to the charge. Ney himself stood in the squares, animating by his presence the men, and cheering them at every volley they poured in.

9. "Yonder, men, yonder is the centre of their position," said he, pointing to the village, which now bristled with armed men, several guns upon a height beyond it, commanding the approach, and a cloud of cavalry hovering near, to pounce down upon those who might be daring enough to assail it. A wild cheer answered his words, both general and soldiers understood each other well.

10. In two columns of attack the division was formed, and then the word "Forward!" was given. "Orderly time, men," said General Dorsenne, who commanded that with which I was; and obedient to the order, the ranks moved as if on parade. And now let me mention a circumstance, which, though trivial in itself, presents a feature of the peculiar character of courage which distinguished the French officer in battle.

11. As the line advanced, the fire of the Prussian battery, which by this had found out our range most accurately, opened severely on us, but more particularly on the left; and, as the men fell fast, and the grape-shot tore through the ranks, a wavering of the line took place, and in several places a broken front was presented.

12. Dorsenne saw it at once, and placing himself in front of the advance, with his back towards the enemy, he called out as if on parade, "Close order—close order. Move up there—left, right—left, right"; and so did he retire step by step, marking the time with his sword, while the shot flew past and around him, and the earth was scattered about by the torrent of the grape-shot. Courage like this would seem to give a charmed life, for while death was dealing fast around him, he never received a wound.

13. Twice did we win our way up the ascent, twice were we beaten back; strong reinforcements were coming up to the enemy's aid, when a loud rolling of the drums and a hoarse cheer from behind revived our spirits—it was Lannes' division advancing at a run. They opened to permit our retiring masses to re-form behind them, and then rushed on. A crash of musketry rung out, and through the smoke the glancing bayonets flashed and the red flame danced wildly.

CHARLES LEVER.

(From "*Tom Burke of Ours.*")

gor'geous
chiv'al-rous

un'du-la-ting
au-tum'nal

man-œu-vres
ob-lique'ly

Par.

2. Austerlitz, in Austria, where Napoleon defeated the Austrians and Russians in 1805.
4. convexity, the part that bulges out.

Par.

5. manœuvres, movements.
7. *Vierzehn Heiligen*, means "Fourteen Saints."
11. grape-shot, shot made of balls fastened together like a bunch of grapes.

Derivations, etc.

Par.

1. artillery, from Lat. *ars* (*art-is*), art; great machines of war, which had to be made and used *with art*.
- „ brilliant, from Lat. *beryllus*, the beryl (a precious stone), through Italian, *brillare*, to shine (like a beryl).
2. cavalry, chivalrous, from Lat. *caballus*, a horse, through Italian and French.
3. undulating, from Lat. *unda*, a wave; rolling like waves.
- „ infantry, from Lat. *infans*, an infant or young child, through Fr. *enfant*, a child.

Par.

- The footsoldiers were at first the servants of the mounted knights, and it was, and is, often the custom to call a servant or inferior a *boy* or *lad*. Thus a French officer speaking to his men calls them "*mes enfants*," "my children," while an Englishman would call his men "my lads."
4. autumnal, from Lat. *augeo* (*auct-um*), I increase; the time of *increase* or fruit.
 12. courage, from Lat. *cor*, the heart.

Oral Exercises.

1. Give an account of the French order of attack at Jena.
2. What gave a temporary check to the French, and how were order and firmness restored?

Composition.

Write an essay on "Bravery."

40.—THE BATTLE OF JENA.

PART II.

1. "*En avant! en avant!*" burst from every man, as, maddened with excitement, we plunged into the fray. Like a vast torrent tumbling from

some mountain gorge, the column poured on, overwhelming all before it, now struggling for a moment, as some obstacle delayed, but could not arrest its march; now, headlong rushing, it swept along.

2. The village was won, the Prussians fell back, their guns opened fiercely on us, and cavalry tore past, sabring all who sought not shelter within the walls. But the post was ours, the key of their position was in our hands, and Ney sent three messengers, one after the other to the emperor, to let him know the result, and enable him to push forward and attack the Prussian centre.

3. Suddenly a wild cry was heard from the little street of the village, the houses were in flames, the Prussians had thrown in heated shells, and the wooden roofs of the cottages caught up the fire. For an instant all became, as it were, panic-struck, and a confused movement of retreat was begun; but the next moment order was restored—the sappers scaled the walls of the burning houses, and with their axes severed the timbers, and suffered the blazing mass to fall within the buildings.

4. But by this time the Prussians had re-formed their columns and once more advanced to the attack—the moment was in their favour, the disorder of our ranks, and the sudden fear inspired by an unlooked-for danger still continued, when they came on. Then indeed began a scene



J. MENZIES

CHARGE OF OUTRASSIERS AT JENA.

against the wall of a house, a horseman tore past, and with one vigorous cut cleft open my shoulder. I staggered back, and fell, covered with blood, upon the door-sill. I saw our column pass on cheering, and heard the wild cry, "*en avant, en avant!*" swelling from a thousand voices, and then faint and exhausted, my senses reeled, and the rest was like an indistinct dream.

10. Stunned, and like one but half-awake, I followed the tide of marching men which swept past like a mighty river, the roar of the artillery, and the crash of battle, increasing the confusion of my brain. All distinct memory of the remainder of the day is lost to me.

11. I can recollect the explosion of several waggons of the ammunition-train, and how the splinters wounded several of those around me. I also have a vague dreamy sense of being hurried along at intervals, and then seeing masses of cavalry dash past; but the great prevailing thought, above all others, is, of leaning over the edge of a "*charrette*," where I lay with some wounded soldiers, to watch the retreat of the Prussians, as they were pursued by Murat's cavalry.

CHARLES LEVER.

(From "*Tom Burke of Ours*.")

an-i-mos'i-ty
ec'-sta-sy

vol-ti-geur'
cui-ras-siers'

am-mu-ni'-tion
vague

Par.

1. en avant, forward.
,, gorge, narrow, rocky passage.

Par.

2. key, the most important point.

Par.

3. sappers, soldiers furnished with axes and other tools
4. carnage, slaughter.
5. grenadier, a tall soldier, originally one who carried a *grenade* or bomb.

Par.

6. Faubourg, an outer quarter of Paris, here the Faubourg St. Antoine.
- „ voltigeur, light soldier.
11. charrette, carriage.

Derivations, etc.

Par.

1. excitement, from Lat. *ex*, out of, *cico* (*citum*), to call or summon.
3. scaled, from Lat. *scala*, a ladder.
4. carnage, from Lat. *caro* (*car-nis*), flesh.
5. ecstasy, from Greek *ec*, out of, *sta-*, a root meaning to stand.
- „ *Vandamme*, one of Napoleon's generals.
- „ *grenadier*, from *grenade*, the French name of the pomegranate. A grenade was so-called because it was like the pomegranate in shape.

Par.

5. shako, from Hungarian *csako*, a cap.
- „ volley, from Lat. *volo*, I fly.
8. cuirassiers, *cuirass*, French *cuirasse* is from Latin *corium*, leather, because it was originally made of leather. Now it is a steel breast-plate.
11. ammunition, from Latin *munio*, I protect; originally all military stores.
- „ pursue, from Latin *per*, through, *sequor*, I follow, through French *poursuivre*, to follow.

Oral Exercises.

1. Describe the capture of the village.
2. Describe the counter attack by the Prussians.

Composition.

Write an essay on (a) "My Favourite Novel";
or (b) "My Favourite Character in Fiction"



THERE WAS A SOUND OF REVELRY BY NIGHT.

41.—THE EVE OF WATERLOO.

1. There was a sound of revelry by night,
And Belgium's capital had gathered then
Her beauty and her chivalry, and bright
The lamps shone o'er fair women and brave
men ;
A thousand hearts beat happily ; and when
Music arose with its voluptuous swell,
Soft eyes looked love to eyes which spake
again,
And all went merry as a marriage bell ;
But hush ! hark ! a deep sound strikes like a rising
knell.

2. Did ye not hear it? No; 'twas but the wind,
Or the car rattling o'er the stony street;
On with the dance, let joy be unconfined;
No sleep till morn, when youth and pleasure
meet
To chase the glowing hours with flying feet.
But hark! that heavy sound breaks in once
more,
As if the clouds its echo would repeat;
And nearer, clearer, deadlier than before!
Arm! arm! it is—it is—the cannon's opening
roar!
3. Within a windowed niche of that high hall
Sate Brunswick's fated chieftain; he did hear
That sound, the first amidst the festival,
And caught its tone with death's prophetic
ear;
And when they smiled because he deemed it
near
His heart more truly knew that peal too well
Which stretched his father on a bloody bier,
And roused the vengeance blood alone could
quell;
He rushed into the field, and foremost fighting
fell.
4. Ah! then and there was hurrying to and fro,
And gathering tears, and tremblings of distress,
And cheeks all pale, which but an hour ago
Blushed at the praise of their own loveliness;
And there were sudden partings, such as press

The life from out young hearts, and choking
sighs
Which ne'er might be repeated; who might
guess
If ever more should meet those mutual
eyes,
Since upon night so sweet such awful morn
could rise?



5. And there was mounting in hot haste: the
steed,
The mustering squadron, and the clattering
car,
Went pouring forward with impetuous speed,
And swiftly forming in the ranks of war;
And the deep thunder, peal on peal afar;
And near, the beat of the alarming drum
Roused up the soldier ere the morning star;
While thronged the citizens with terror dumb,
Or whispering with white lips, "The foe,—
they come, they come!"

6. And wild and high the "Cameron's gathering"
 rose,
The war note of Lochiel, which Albyn's hills
Have heard, and heard, too, have her Saxon
 foes:
How in the noon of night that pibroch thrills
Savage and shrill! But with the breath which
 fills
Their mountain pipe, so fill the mountaineers
With the fierce native daring which instils
The stirring memory of a thousand years
And Evan's, Donald's fame rings in each clans-
 man's ears!
7. And Ardennes waves above them her green
 leaves,
Dewy with nature's tear-drops, as they pass,
Grieving, if aught inanimate e'er grieves,
Over the unreturning brave—alas!
Ere evening to be trodden like the grass
Which now beneath them, but above shall
 grow
In its next verdure, when the fiery mass
Of living valour, rolling on the foe,
And burning with high hope, shall moulder cold
 and low.
8. Last noon beheld them full of lusty life,
Last eve in Beauty's circle proudly gay,
The midnight brought the signal-sound of
 strife,

The morn the marshalling in arms—the day
Battle's magnificently stern array!

The thunder clouds close o'er it, which when
rent

The earth is covered thick with other clay,
Which her own clay shall cover, heaped and
pent,

Rider and horse,—friend, foe,—in one red burial
blent!

LORD BYRON.

(From "*Childe Harold's Pilgrimage*.")



chiv'al-ry
vo-lup'tu-ous
pro-phet'ic

chief-tain
fest-i-val
pi'broch

moun-tain-eers'
mar-shal-ling
mag-nif-i-cent-ly

Ver.

1. a sound of revelry by night,
a great ball given by the
Duchess of Richmond.

Ver.

1. chivalry, here means brave
men.

Derivations, etc.

Ver.

1. revelry, from Lat. *rebello*, I
rebel; *unrestrained* mirth
or rejoicing.
3. prophetic, from Greek *pro*,

forth, *phemi*, I speak. The
word prophet was at first
applied to any one who
spoke out in God's name,
not merely to a foreteller.

Ver.

3. bier, connected with *bear*.
6. thrill, from Old English *thirlan*, to pierce.
7. verdure, from Latin *ver*, spring.

Ver.

8. strife, connected with *strive*, as *life* with *live*. Give other examples.

Oral Exercises.

1. Tell in your own words how the ball at Brussels was interrupted.
2. Describe the hurried gathering for battle.
3. Describe the effect of the Highland pibroch.

Composition.

Write an essay on "Napoleon"; or "Wellington"; or "The French Revolution"; or "Waterloo."



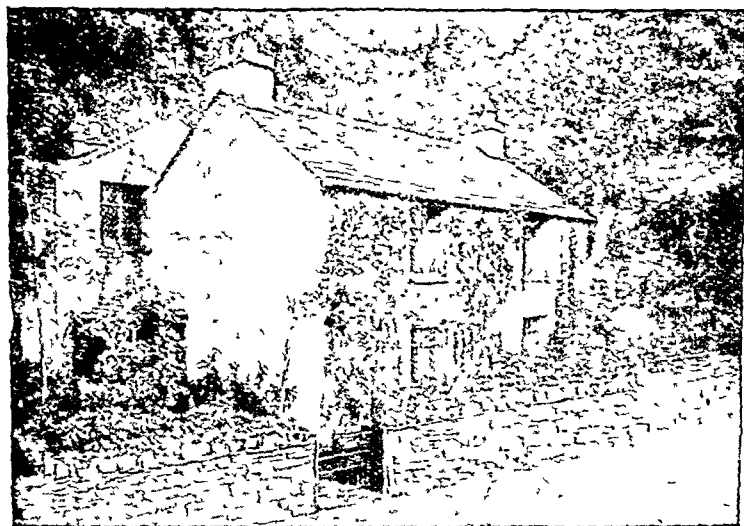
42.—A LAKELAND COTTAGE.

[Thomas De Quincey was born at Manchester in 1785, and died at Edinburgh in 1859. He early contracted the terrible habit of eating opium, and suffered much from the consequences. From 1809 to 1828 he resided at Grasmere, in the Lake District of Westmorland, where he lived in Dove Cottage, formerly occupied by Wordsworth. The following extract from "The Confessions of an English Opium Eater," the most celebrated of his works, describes this cottage, perhaps the most famous of all the humble abodes of genius.]

1. Let there be a cottage, standing in a valley, eighteen miles from any town — no spacious valley, but about two miles long by three-quarters of a mile in average width; the benefit of which provision is, that all the families resident

within its circuit will compose, as it were, one larger household personally familiar to your eye, and more or less interesting to your affections.

2. Let the mountains be real mountains, between three and four thousand feet high; and the cottage a real cottage, not (as a witty



DOVE COTTAGE.

author has it) “a cottage with a double coach-house”; let it be, in fact (for I must abide by the actual scene), a white cottage, embowered with flowering shrubs, so chosen as to unfold a succession of flowers upon the walls, and clustering round the windows through all the months of spring, summer, and autumn—beginning, in fact, with May roses, and ending with jasmine.

3. Let it, however, *not* be spring, nor summer, nor autumn—but winter in his sternest shape. This is a most important point in the science of happiness. And I am surprised to see people overlook it, and think it matter of congratulation that winter is going, or, if coming, is not likely to be a severe one. On the contrary, I put up a petition annually for as much snow, hail, frost, or storm, of one kind or other, as the skies can possibly afford us.

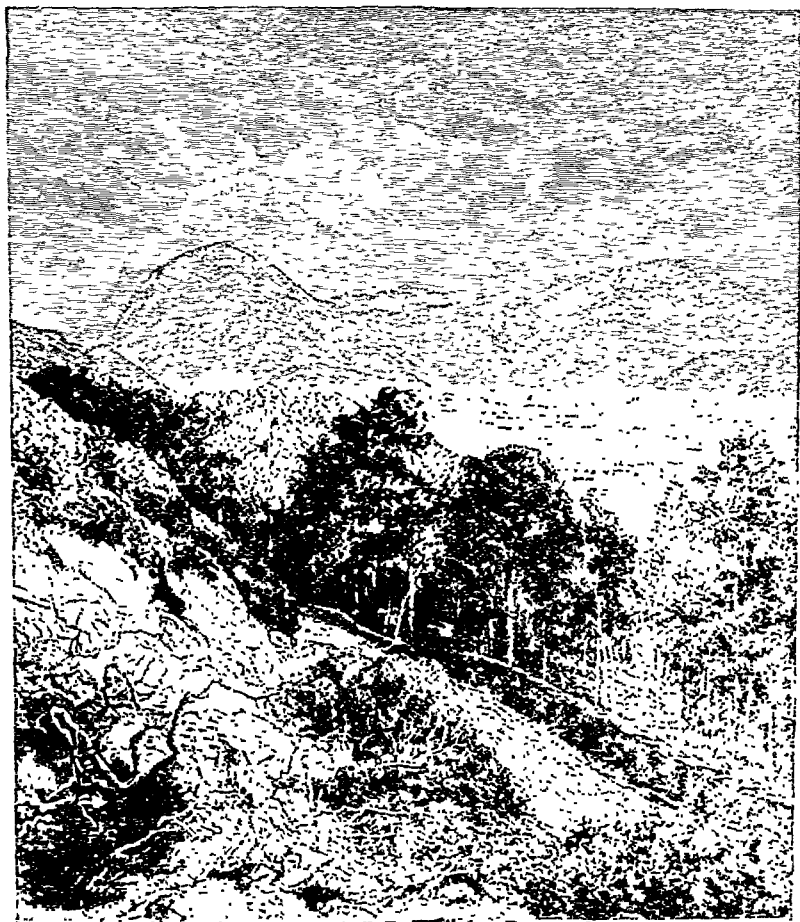
4. Surely everybody is aware of the divine pleasures which attend a winter fireside; candles at four o'clock, warm hearth-rugs, tea, a fair tea-maker, shutters closed, curtains flowing in ample draperies on the floor, whilst the wind and rain are raging audibly without,

And at the doors and windows seem to call,
As heav'n and earth they would together mell,
Yet the least entrance find they none at all,
Whence sweeter grows our rest secure in
massy hall.¹

5. All these are items in the description of a winter evening, which must surely be familiar to everybody born in a high latitude. And it is evident that most of these delicacies, like ice-cream, require a very low temperature of the atmosphere to produce them; they are fruits which cannot be ripened without weather stormy

¹ Thomson, "The Castle of Indolence."

or inclement, in some way or other. I am not "*particular*," as people say, whether it be snow, or



From Harper's Magazine.

Copyright, 1881, by Harper & Brothers.

IN THE ENGLISH LAKE DISTRICT.

black frost, or wind so strong that (as Mr. — says) "you may lean your back against it like a post."

6. I can put up even with rain, provided it rains cats and dogs; but something of the sort I must have; and, if I have not, I think myself in a manner ill-used; for why am I called on to pay so heavily for winter, in coals and candles, and various privations that will occur even to gentlemen, if I am not to have the article good of its kind? No; a Canadian winter for my money; or a Russian one, where every man is but a co-proprietor with the north wind in the fee-simple of his own ears.

7. Indeed, so great an epicure am I in this matter, that I cannot relish a winter night fully if it be much past St. Thomas's Day, and have degenerated into disgusting tendencies to vernal appearances; no, it must be divided by a thick wall of dark nights from all return of light and sunshine.

8. From the latter days of October to Christmas Eve, therefore, is the period during which happiness is in season, which, in my judgment, enters the room with the tea-tray; for tea, though ridiculed by those who are naturally of coarse nerves, or are become so from wine-drinking, and are not susceptible of influence from so refined a stimulant, will always be the favourite beverage of the intellectual; and, for my part, I would have joined Dr. Johnson in a *bellum internecinum* against Jonas Hanway, or any other impious person, who should presume to disparage it.

9. But hereto save myself the trouble of

too much verbal description, I will introduce a painter, and give him directions for the rest of the picture. Painters do not like white cottages unless a good deal weather-stained; but as the reader now understands that it is a winter night, his services will not be required, except for the inside of the house.

10. Paint me, then, a room seventeen feet by twelve, and not more than seven and a half feet high. This, reader, is somewhat ambitiously styled, in my family, the drawing-room; but, being contrived "a double debt to pay," it is also, and more justly, termed the library; for it happens that books are the only article of property in which I am richer than my neighbours.

11. Of these I have about five thousand, collected gradually since my eighteenth year. Therefore, painter, put as many as you can into this room. Make it populous with books; and, furthermore, paint me a good fire; and furniture plain and modest, befitting the unpretending cottage of a scholar.

12. And, near the fire, paint me a tea-table; and (as it is clear that no creature can come to see one such a stormy night), place only two cups and saucers on the tea-tray; and if you know how to paint such a thing symbolically, or otherwise, paint me an eternal tea-pot — eternal *à parte ante*, and *à parte post*; for I usually drink tea from eight o'clock at night to four o'clock in the morning.

13. And, as it is very unpleasant to make tea or to pour it out for oneself, paint me a lovely young woman sitting at the table. Paint her arms like Aurora's, and her smiles like Hebe's. But no, dear M——, not even in jest let me insinuate that thy power to illuminate my cottage rests upon a tenure so perishable as mere personal beauty; or that the witchcraft of angelic smiles lies within the empire of any earthly pencil.

THOMAS DE QUINCEY.

(From "The Confessions of an English Opium-Eater.")



cir'cuit	ep'i-cure	in-tel-lec'tu-al
con-grat-u-la'tion	de-gen'er-a-ted	dis-par'age
pe-ti'tion	ten'den-cies	am-bi'tious-ly
del'i-ca-cies	judg'ment	pop'u-lous
tem'per-a-ture	rid'i-culed	sym-bol'ic-al-ly
at'mo-sphere	sus-cep'ti-ble	He'be
co-pro-pri'e-tor	bev'er-age	in-sin'u-ate

Par.

1. a valley, the valley of Grasmere.
2. between three or four thousand feet high. The mountains seen from Grasmere do not reach the height of 3000 feet; but Helvellyn, Scafell, Skiddaw and others, which are visible from points near it, are all slightly above this height.
- „ “a cottage with a double coach-house,” quoted from a poem by Coleridge, in which it is used as an illustration of “the pride that apes humility,” Satan’s favourite sin, according to the poet.
4. mell, mingle.
5. high latitude, latitude near the pole and distant from the equator.
6. fee-simple, full possession.
7. epicure, lover of dainties. Epicurus was a philos-

Par.

- ophor whose followers held pleasure and ease to be the most desirable of all things.
7. St. Thomas’s Day, the 21st of December.
- „ vernal, springlike.
8. bellum internecinum, war without quarter.
- „ Jonas Hanway (1712–1786); an English traveller.
10. “a double debt to pay,” made to serve two purposes. (Quoted from Goldsmith’s “Deserted Village.”)
12. à parte ante, from the past.
- „ à parte post, towards the future.
13. Aurora, the Roman goddess of dawn.
- „ Hebe, the Greek goddess of youth.
- „ Dear M——, De Quincey’s wife, whose maiden name was Margaret Simpson.
- „ within the empire, within the power.

Derivations, etc.

Par.

1. familiar, from Latin *familia*, a household.
2. shrub, another form of the word *scrub*.
- „ scene, from Greek *scēnē*, a tent; hence a covered stage on which plays were acted; hence a group, a picture.
5. item, from Latin *item*, likewise. Formerly each line of a bill after the first began

Par.

- with the word *item*. People came to speak of the *items* of a bill; and so *items* came to mean *separate articles* making up a whole.
5. latitude, from Latin *latus*, broad, because parallels of latitude are drawn across a map, when the north is put at the top.
- „ particular, from Latin *parti-*

Par.

culus, a little part, a detail. 'Particular' at first meant 'detailed,' then "paying much attention to detail"; hence it is now frequently used to mean *fastidious* or *exacting*. De Quincey shows by his use of quotation marks that he does not think this a correct meaning.

6. proprietor, from Latin *proprius*, one's own.
- ., fee, from Old English *feoh*, cattle; hence *any kind of property*; now it has come to mean *payment* for some kinds of work.
7. degenerated, from Latin *de*, down, *genus* (*gener-is*), family or kind.
- ., disgusting, from Latin *dis*, asunder, *gusto*, I taste.
- 8 happiness, from *hap*, chance; hence *good chances* or *fortune*.
- ., tray, from Latin *traho*, I draw.
10. ambitiously, from Latin *amb-*

Par

ire, to go about. It was the custom in Rome for people who wished to be elected to public offices to *go about* among the citizens asking for their favour. Hence a man who wished to be elected was said to have *ambition*.

10. neighbours, from Old English *neah*, nigh or near, and *gebur*, a farmer or countryman. Applied first to dwellers in the country, and then generally.
11. gradually, from Latin *gradus*, a step. Explain the derivation.
13. jest, from Latin *gesta*, deeds. Books called "*Gesta Romanorum*" ("Deeds of the Romans") were great favourites in the Middle Ages. They contained stories, many of which were humorous, so that 'geste' or 'jest,' which at first meant a story of adventure, came to mean a joke.

Oral Exercises.

Describe (1) The valley.

(2) The outside of the cottage.

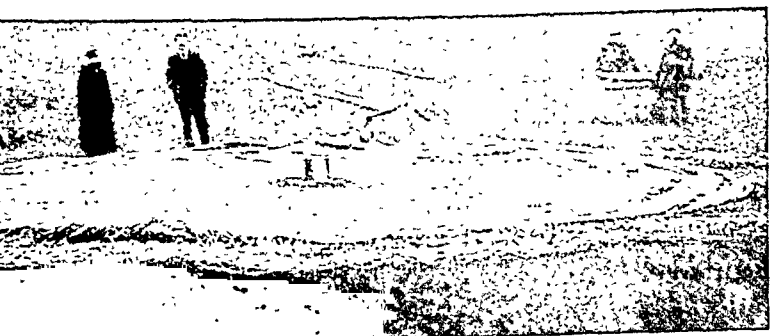
(3) The inside of the cottage.

Give De Quincey's reasons for preferring a severe winter to a mild one.

Composition.

Write an essay on (a) "The Joys of Winter."

or (b) "The Disadvantages of Winter."



THE BALLOON.

43.—ABOUT BALLOONS.

PART I.

1. Ballooning has always had a great fascination for men, and as early as the sixties very considerable attention was devoted to experiments at great altitudes. Mr. James Glaisher and Mr. Coxwell, Nestor of aeronauts, who is still among us, took many aerial voyages, and reported on them to the British Association.

2. The wish to acquire some of the powers of birds still exists in nearly all civilised countries, and recently many adventurous ascents have been made. Perhaps the most famous of these ventures was the ill-starred attempt of the Norwegian Andree to reach the North Pole by means of a balloon. He paid the penalty of his rashness with his life; but ballooning is still eagerly practised, though few would think of such a voyage as he undertook.

3. In October 1898, Dr. Arthur Berson of Berlin and Mr. Percival Spencer of London made an

ascent from the Crystal Palace for the purpose of taking scientific observations in the upper region of the earth's atmosphere. The balloon used for the purpose was one of Messrs. Spencer's best, towering 75 feet in height, of 50 feet diameter, and with capacity for 50,000 feet of gas. To carry the two voyagers and 400 pounds of sand ballast



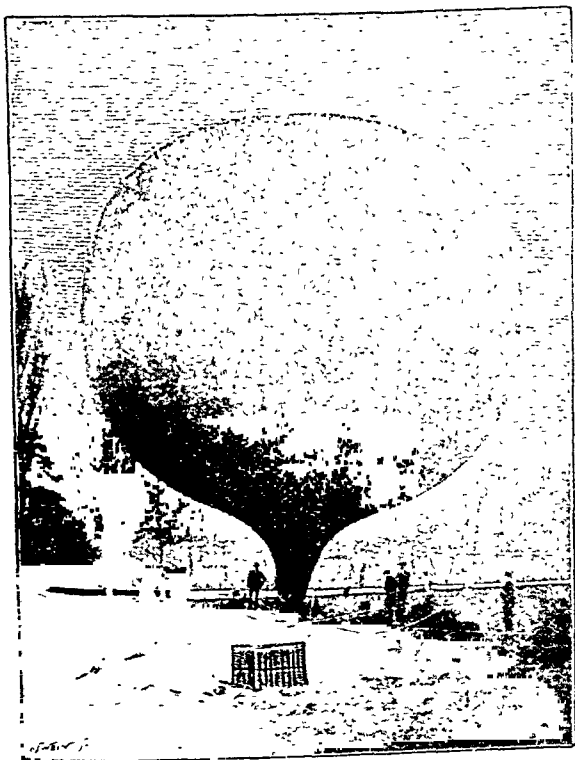
INFLATING THE BALLOON.

in bags, 30,000 feet of pure hydrogen gas was deemed sufficient.

4. The ascent was not intended to be one of the spectacles of the day, and was not made from the regular balloon area, but from a sequestered nook, where, however, some few hundred spectators congregated. The gas was made from Messrs. Spencer's own material and apparatus, and at two o'clock the travellers sailed away.

5. It was a hot afternoon, with little more than a breath of wind stirring on the face of the earth. But the air was rarefied by the heat, and the gas

being very light the balloon darted up a thousand feet in little more than a minute. A slight current took it in the first instance in a north-westerly direction right over the Palace, where it hovered



GETTING READY TO ATTACH THE CAR.

for an appreciable time. A change in the direction of the wind, or rather elevation into another current, then took the travellers away on a north-easterly course at a greater rate of speed than that of the faint current on the earth.

6. A few slight drifts of light cloud floated

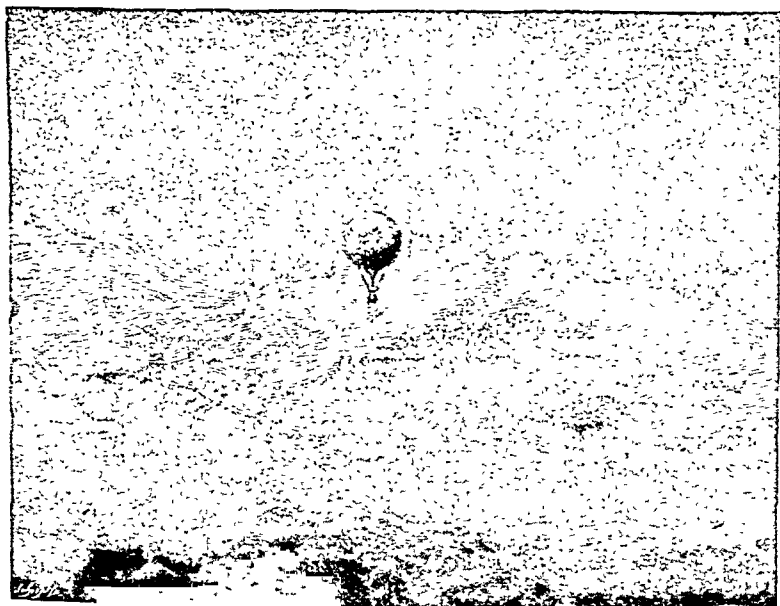
below the blue sky at a height of possibly about two miles above the earth, and towards these at a somewhat lower altitude the balloon appeared to be drifting. A long rope, known as the trail rope, was hanging from the car, and indicated the line of flight. For fully an hour the aerial machine was visible, though appearing no larger than a tennis ball. The film of cloud then vanished, and the last faint speck of the balloon faded away in the empyrean.

7. Dr. Berson was, of course, well provided with self-recording instruments and apparatus; aneroids to gauge the height, camera for photography, means for ascertaining the pressure of the atmosphere, and for capturing and retaining samples of rarefied air. To meet possible emergency, tubes of compressed oxygen were taken, so that if the worst came to the worst, and the atmosphere became too rare to sustain the breath of life, recourse might be had to artificial means of respiration.

8. Two life belts had been put on board at the last moment in case the aerial ship should drift out to the North Sea, somewhere beyond the coast line of Norfolk. It was calculated by Mr. Percival Spencer, the head of the firm, that the balloon rose at the rate of 500 feet per minute, and that it would reach a height of 25,000 feet before any attempt was made to check the elevation. Dr. Berson claims to have already risen to an altitude of seven miles, or one mile higher than

the awful record of Mr. Glaisher and Mr. Coxwell, when both were within an ace of perishing.

9. Though the very slight wind over the surface of the earth was not moving more than five



AMONG THE CLOUDS.

miles an hour, Mr. Percival Spencer was of opinion that at the altitude the aeronauts would reach they would swoop well over London, and would be carried far away to the north-east. No anxiety whatever was felt as to their ultimate safety, unless they were carried out to sea, which was extremely improbable.

10. All doubts on the subject were set at rest by

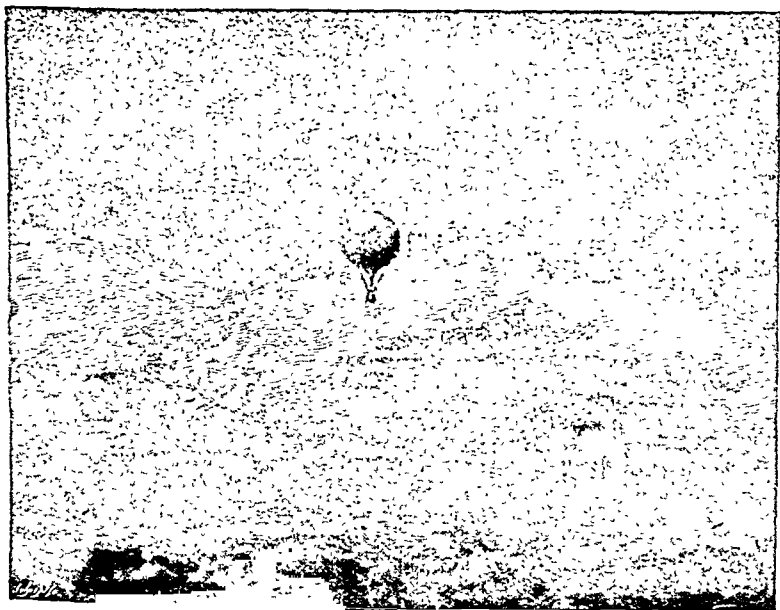
below the blue sky at a height of possibly about two miles above the earth, and towards these at a somewhat lower altitude the balloon appeared to be drifting. A long rope, known as the trail rope, was hanging from the car, and indicated the line of flight. For fully an hour the aerial machine was visible, though appearing no larger than a tennis ball. The film of cloud then vanished, and the last faint speck of the balloon faded away in the empyrean.

7. Dr. Berson was, of course, well provided with self-recording instruments and apparatus; aneroids to gauge the height, camera for photography, means for ascertaining the pressure of the atmosphere, and for capturing and retaining samples of rarefied air. To meet possible emergency, tubes of compressed oxygen were taken, so that if the worst came to the worst, and the atmosphere became too rare to sustain the breath of life, recourse might be had to artificial means of respiration.

8. Two life belts had been put on board at the last moment in case the aerial ship should drift out to the North Sea, somewhere beyond the coast line of Norfolk. It was calculated by Mr. Percival Spencer, the head of the firm, that the balloon rose at the rate of 500 feet per minute, and that it would reach a height of 25,000 feet before any attempt was made to check the elevation. Dr. Berson claims to have already risen to an altitude of seven miles, or one mile higher than

the awful record of Mr. Glaisher and Mr. Coxwell, when both were within an ace of perishing.

9. Though the very slight wind over the surface of the earth was not moving more than five



AMONG THE CLOUDS.

miles an hour, Mr. Percival Spencer was of opinion that at the altitude the aeronauts would reach they would swoop well over London, and would be carried far away to the north-east. No anxiety whatever was felt as to their ultimate safety, unless they were carried out to sea, which was extremely improbable.

10. All doubts on the subject were set at rest by

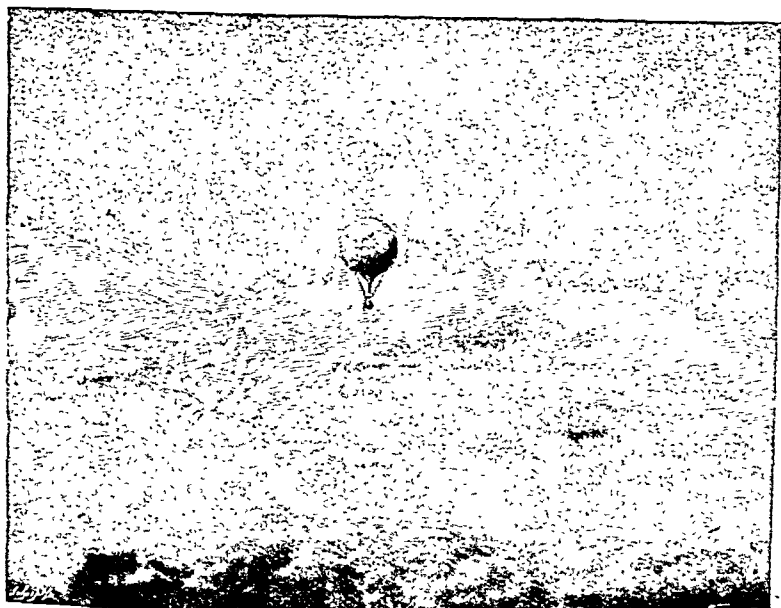
below the blue sky at a height of possibly about two miles above the earth, and towards these at a somewhat lower altitude the balloon appeared to be drifting. A long rope, known as the trail rope, was hanging from the car, and indicated the line of flight. For fully an hour the aerial machine was visible, though appearing no larger than a tennis ball. The film of cloud then vanished, and the last faint speck of the balloon faded away in the empyrean.

7. Dr. Berson was, of course, well provided with self-recording instruments and apparatus; aneroids to gauge the height, camera for photography, means for ascertaining the pressure of the atmosphere, and for capturing and retaining samples of rarefied air. To meet possible emergency, tubes of compressed oxygen were taken, so that if the worst came to the worst, and the atmosphere became too rare to sustain the breath of life, recourse might be had to artificial means of respiration.

8. Two life belts had been put on board at the last moment in case the aerial ship should drift out to the North Sea, somewhere beyond the coast line of Norfolk. It was calculated by Mr. Percival Spencer, the head of the firm, that the balloon rose at the rate of 500 feet per minute, and that it would reach a height of 25,000 feet before any attempt was made to check the elevation. Dr. Berson claims to have already risen to an altitude of seven miles, or one mile higher than

the awful record of Mr. Glaisher and Mr. Coxwell, when both were within an ace of perishing.

9. Though the very slight wind over the surface of the earth was not moving more than five



AMONG THE CLOUDS.

miles an hour, Mr. Percival Spencer was of opinion that at the altitude the aeronauts would reach they would swoop well over London, and would be carried far away to the north-east. No anxiety whatever was felt as to their ultimate safety, unless they were carried out to sea, which was extremely improbable.

10. All doubts on the subject were set at rest by

the receipt in due course of the following telegram:—

“Handed in at Upminster at 5.30. To aeronaut, London.

“Splendid descent near Romford. Over 27,000 feet high.”

11. This would be just over five miles, and therefore within the achievements of Mr. Glaisher and Mr. Coxwell, who undoubtedly ascended six miles in 1862, but it is indeed a very high flight. The lowest temperature recorded in the ascent was minus 34° Centigrade, equalling minus 29° Fah. (61 degrees below freezing point). The atmosphere was clear, and the coast line visible. At 25,000 feet the air became so rarefied that both explorers had to breathe compressed oxygen from tubes.

(Adapted by permission from the “Daily News.”)

fas-ci-na'tion	rar'e-fied	pho-tog'-ra-phy
a'er-o-nauts	ap-pre'ci-able	e-mer'gen-cy
a-e'ri-al	em-pyr-e'an	ox'y-gen
sci-en-tif-ic	in'stru-ments	ar-ti-fi'cial
se-quest'ered	an'er-oids	cal'cu-la-ted
ap-pa-ra'tus	cam'er-a	a-chieve'ments

Par.

1. aeronauts, persons skilled in the management of balloons; the word literally means *air-sailors*.
- „ the Nestor of all aeronauts, the oldest of aeronauts. Homer tells us that Nestor was the oldest of the Greeks who fought against Troy.
2. ill-starred, unfortunate. Ill-

Par.

- starred*, because people used to think that the *stars* showed what men's fortunes were to be.
5. rarefied, expanded or made thin.
- „ an appreciable time, a time that could be observed.
6. the empyrean, the sky.
7. emergency, sudden need.

Derivations, etc.

Par.

1. balloon, from French *ballon*, derived from Teutonic (English, German, &c.) *ball*.
- „ fascination, from Latin *fascino*, I bewitch.
2. civilised, from Latin *civis*, a citizen.
- „ voyage, from Latin *via*, a way, French *voyage*, a journey either by land or sea. Note the change of meaning which has taken place in this word.
5. appreciable, from Latin *ad*, to, *pretium*, a price.
6. empyrean, from Greek, *en*, in; and *pyr*, fire; because the sky was supposed to be a region of pure fire.

Par.

7. aneroid, from Greek *a*, without, and *neros*, wet; because an aneroid barometer is one made without mercury or any other liquid.
- „ photography, from Greek *phos* (*phot-os*), light, and *grapho*, I write or paint. Photographs are, as it were, pictures drawn or painted by light.
- „ emergency, from Latin *e*, out of, and *mergo*, I plunge, some need which suddenly arises.
8. calculated, from Latin *calculus*, a little stone, because at first people counted with stones as young children still count with their fingers.

Oral Exercises.

1. Describe the balloon and its fittings.
2. Describe the voyage.

Composition.

Write a letter accepting an invitation to accompany an aeronaut on a balloon ascent.

44.—ABOUT BALLOONS.

PART II.

1. When the aerial car with charioteer and passenger had passed away into space, a representative of the "Daily News" had some conversation with members of the Spencer family. Mr. Arthur Spencer said—"You see we come of an aeronautical family, going back for three generations."

2. Mr. Spencer said that in all that time his people never had had any serious accidents.

They had not even had abrasions, much less broken limbs or more serious injuries. The secret of their safety lay in the fact that they had always used excellent materials, and that all they worked with was good and trustworthy. If any weakness appears in a balloon it is unsafe to continue to use it; and it ought to be at once burnt up or destroyed in some other way. This is what the Spencer family always did; and so they escaped the frightful dangers that would result from the sudden collapse of a balloon or any important part of it.

3. Of course, even when great precaution is used, accidents happen; and Mr. Arthur Spencer told his interviewer that he had had some rather striking adventures. Once he was working a captive balloon at Reading, when he noticed that the cable was giving way and was about to part. No one being in the car at the moment he jumped in, just before the cable broke. The balloon darted up one thousand feet into the air. Mr. Spencer gasped, but was not at all scared; while the people who had been watching the proceedings of the aeronaut thought that his sudden ascent was part of the programme. He had to travel fourteen miles, however, before he could pull up.

4. After Mr. Percival Spencer, who had made the ascent already described had returned, he gave some of his views on the subject of ballooning. This he was well qualified to do, for he had had experience of ballooning in India,

China, Africa, and America; and had made altogether more than one thousand ascents.

5. Although it is often said that wind blows in different directions at different heights, his experience was precisely the contrary. If a strong wind was blowing at the start—for example, a south-westerly wind at twenty miles an hour—then, however high he went, he always found it blowing in the same direction. No doubt it is often the case that when a light wind is blowing in one direction at the earth's surface, higher up there are different light winds; but Mr. Spencer's experience proves that strong winds do not vary in this way.

6. Mr. Spencer holds that the problem of aerial navigation will be solved by a proper use of parachutes. In their case, neither gas to sustain nor motor to propel is required. Steering to some extent is possible with parachutes. It would not be safe to leave a balloon if a lake was seen underneath, but houses and trees can be easily avoided.

7. The parachute is on the umbrella principle, without the handle. It is a canopy of silk, and the aeronaut is supported by cords from the edge all the way round, extended for greater safety up to the centre. It is delightfully easy, and one feels quite at home in it. You and the apparatus are one, and you float together in the air like thistledown. Indeed, thistledown may be seen floating in this way at a great height. "I have thought," said Mr. Spencer, quite gravely, "that a

parachute party would be rather nice. Say, two or three ladies and as many men, in a car attached to a parachute, and lowered from a balloon. You touch the earth quite gently."

8. The idea of such a project was one that made the interviewer gasp. But when later on he had the privilege of seeing photographs and pictures of the Spencer family in the car of a balloon, he did not feel quite so much astonished at the daring suggestion. He knew that Mr. Percy Spencer had descended by parachute on the Himalayas, though he did not say so, and had found his way down safely.

9. "The moment your foot touches the earth," Mr. Spencer went on to say, "the power of the parachute is gone." A parachute must be about twenty feet in diameter to sustain a man in safety.

(Adapted by permission from the "Daily News.")

char-i-o-teer'	pro'-gramme	na-vi-ga'-tion	priv'-i-lege
a-bra'sions	qua'-li-fied	pa'-ra-chutes	sug-ges'-ti-on
col-lapse'	ex-pe'-ri-ence	prin'-ci-ple	di-am'-et-er

Par.

2. abrasions, bruises.
3. a captive balloon, a balloon fastened to the ground, so that it cannot rise above a certain height.
6. parachutes, large umbrella-shaped instruments, by

Par.

means of which a descent through the air may be made from a great height at a safe speed.

6. motor, source of power or motion, an engine.

Derivations, etc.

Par.

3. programme, from Greek *pro*, before, *gramma*, a letter, or anything written.
6. problem, from Greek *pro*, and

Par.

ballo (root *ble*), I throw; something set before one to do.

6. parachute, from French *parer*, to ward off, *chute*, a fall.

Par.

7. umbrella, from Latin *umbra*,
a shadow. Notice the

change which has taken
place in the meaning of this
word.

Oral Exercises.

1. What is the secret of long continued safety in balloon ascents?
2. What has been ascertained by aeronauts as to the direction of the air at different levels?
3. Describe Mr. Arthur Spencer's unexpected ascent.
4. How are parachutes used?

Composition.

Write a letter declining an invitation to accompany an aeronaut on a balloon ascent

45.—THE FALSE ALARM.

[During the Napoleonic wars, the French several times projected an invasion of Great Britain, but the superiority of the British navy prevented the completion of any of their schemes. Lest, however, the fleets of Napoleon should succeed in eluding the British warships, a system of beacons was arranged, by which notice of a landing might be at once given. On a few occasions the men in charge of these beacons were deceived by accidental fires, and lighted their piles, thereby rousing the country. The following description of one of these false alarms is from Sir Walter Scott's novel *The Antiquary*.]

PART I.

1. The watch who kept his watch on the hill, and looked towards Birnam, probably conceived himself dreaming when he first beheld the fated grove put itself into motion for its march to Dunsinane. Even so old Caxon, as, perched in his hut, he qualified his thoughts upon the approaching marriage of his daughter, with an occasional peep towards the signal-post with which his own corresponded, was not a little surprised by observing a light in that direction.

2. He rubbed his eyes, looked again, adjusting

his observation by a cross-staff which had been placed so as to bear upon the point. And behold, the light increased, like a comet to the eye of the astronomer, "with fear of change perplexing nations."

"The Lord preserve us!" said Caxon, "what's to be done now? But there will be wiser heads than mine to look to that, sae I'se e'en fire the beacon."

3. And he lighted the beacon accordingly, which threw up to the sky a long wavering train of light, startling the sea-fowl from their nests, and reflected far beneath by the reddening billows of the sea. The brother warders of Caxon being equally diligent, caught and repeated his signal. The lights glanced on headlands and capes and inland hills, and the whole district was alarmed by the signal of invasion.

4. Our Antiquary, his head wrapped warm in two double night-caps, was quietly enjoying his repose, when it was suddenly broken by the screams of his sister, his niece, and two maid-servants.

"What is the matter?" said he, starting up in his bed—"womankind in my room at this hour of night!—are ye all mad?"

5. "The beacon, uncle!" said Miss M'Intyre.

"The French coming to murder us!" screamed Miss Griselda.

"The beacon! the beacon!—the French! the

French! — murder! murder! and waur than murder!”—cried the two handmaidens, like the chorus of an opera.

6. “The French?” said Oldbuck, starting up;—“get out of the room, womankind that you are, till I get my things on.—And hark ye, bring me my sword.”

7. “Whilk o’ them, Monkbarns?” cried his sister, offering a Roman falchion of brass with the one hand, and with the other an Andrea Ferrara without a handle.

“The langest, the langest,” cried Jenny Rintherout, dragging in a two-handed sword of the twelfth century.

8. “Womankind,” said Oldbuck, in great agitation, “be composed, and do not give way to vain terror—Are you sure they are come?”

“Sure, sure!” exclaimed Jenny—“ower sure!—a’ the sea fencibles, and the land fencibles, and the volunteers and yeomanry, are on fit, and driving to Fairport as hard as horse and man can gang.”

9. “Give me,” said Oldbuck, “the sword which my father wore in the year forty-five—it hath no belt or baldrick—but we’ll make shift.”

So saying he thrust the weapon through the cover of his breeches pocket. At this moment Hector entered, who had been to a neighbouring height to ascertain whether the alarm was actual.

10. “Where are your arms, nephew?” exclaimed Oldbuck—“where is your double-barrelled gun,



“WE’LL MAKE SHIFT.”

that was never out of your hand when there was no occasion for such vanities?”

11. “Pooh! pooh! sir,” said Hector, “who ever took a fowling-piece on action? I have got my uniform on, you see—I hope I shall be of more use if they will give me a command, than I could be with ten double-barrels. And you, sir, must get to Fairport, to give directions for quartering and maintaining the men and horses, and preventing confusion.”

12. “You are right, Hector—I believe I shall do as much with my head as my hand, too. But here comes Sir Arthur Wardour, who, between

ourselves, is not fit to accomplish much either one way or the other."

13. Sir Arthur was probably of a different opinion; for, dressed in his lieutenantcy uniform, he was also on the road to Fairport, and called in his way to take Mr. Oldbuck with him, having had his original opinion of his sagacity much confirmed by late events. And in spite of all the entreaties of the womankind that the Antiquary would stay to garrison Monkbarns, Mr. Oldbuck, with his nephew, instantly accepted Sir Arthur's offer.

Sir WALTER SCOTT.

(From "*The Antiquary*.")

con-ceived'
fal'chion
a-gi-ta'tion

yeo-man-ry
bald'rick
neigh'bour-ing

main-tain'ing
con-fu'sion
lieu (*lif*)-ten'an-cy

Par.

1. the watch who . . . looked towards Birnam. Macbeth's watchman, when he saw the army of Siward and Malcolm advancing under cover of green boughs which they had cut from Birnam Wood, thought he saw the wood itself moving towards him. See Shakespeare's play of *Macbeth*, Act V. Scene 5.
2. cross-staff, which pointed in the exact direction of the next beacon.
- „ "with fear of change perplexing nations." Comets were formerly supposed to be the signs of great events. The quotation is from Milton's *Paradise Lost*, Book I. line 597, and should be "and with fear of change perplexes monarchs."
- „ 'Pse e'en, Scots for *I will even*.

Par.

5. waur, Scots for *worse*.
7. whilk, old Scots for *which*.
- „ falchion, a curved sword.
- „ Andrea Ferrara, the name of a celebrated Italian sword-maker of the sixteenth century.
- „ the twelfth century. Notice that Mr. Oldbuck has a large number of *ancient* swords. His newest is fifty years old.
8. ower sure, Scots for *over sure* or too sure.
- „ fencibles, soldiers for home defence.
- „ yeomanry, farmers and other countrymen mounted as auxiliary cavalry.
- „ on fit, Scots for *on foot*.
- „ Fairport, supposed to be Scott's name for Arbroath.
9. baldrick, a military belt.

Derivations, etc.

Par.

1. grove, originally a *path cut in a wood*; connected with *grave*, and *groove*.
- „ march, from Latin *marcus*, a hammer, because of the regular stroke of marching feet.
- „ approach, from Latin *ad*, to, *proximus*, very near.
2. comet, from Greek *come*, hair.
3. train, from Latin *traho*, I draw. Show that the different meanings of train (as *a train of thought*, the *train of a dress*, a *railway train*, a *train of circumstances*, etc.) are all connected with the meaning of *traho*.

Par.

3. warder, connected with *guard*. Compare *war* and French *guerre*, *wicket* and French *guichet*, *Walter* and *Gualtier*, *William* and *Guil-laume*.
6. hark, connected with *hear*, as *talk* with *tell*.
9. pocket, diminutive from *pouch* or *poke*; as *jacket* from *jack*, a military doublet of leather.
13. event, from Latin *e*, out of, *venio* (*vent-um*), I come; that which results from or *comes out of* anything, hence any occurrence.
- „ nephew, from Latin *nepos*, a grandson.

Oral Exercises.

1. How were the beacons intended to be used?
2. Describe Mr. Oldbuck's choice of swords.
3. What course did Hector suggest?

Composition.

Write an essay on the advantages of the insular position of Great Britain.

46.—THE FALSE ALARM.

PART II.

1. Those who have witnessed such a scene can alone conceive the state of bustle in Fairport. The windows were glancing with a hundred lights, which, appearing and disappearing rapidly, indicated the confusion within doors. The women of lower rank assembled and clamoured in the market-place.

2. The yeomanry, pouring from their different

glens, galloped through the streets, some individually, some in parties of five or six, as they had met on the road. The drums and fifes of the volunteers beating to arms, were blended with the voice of the officers, the sound of the bugles, and the tolling of the bells from the steeple.

3. The ships in the harbour were lit up, and boats from the armed vessels added to the bustle, by landing men and guns destined to assist in the defence of the place. This part of the preparations was superintended by Taffril with much activity. Two or three light vessels had already slipped their cables and stood out to sea, in order to discover the supposed enemy.

4. Such was the scene of general confusion, when Sir Arthur Wardour, Oldbuck, and Hector made their way with difficulty into the principal square, where the town-house is situated. It was lighted up, and the magistracy, with many of the neighbouring gentlemen, were assembled. And here, as upon other occasions of the like kind in Scotland, it was remarkable how the good sense and firmness of the people supplied almost all the deficiencies of inexperience.

5. The magistrates were beset by the quartermasters of the different corps for billets for men and horses. "Let us," said Bailie Littlejohn, "take the horses into our warehouses, and the men into our parlours—share our supper with the one, and our forage with the other. We have made ourselves wealthy under a free and paternal

government, and now is the time to show we know its value."

6. A loud and cheerful acquiescence was given by all present, and the substance of the wealthy, with the persons of those of all ranks, were unanimously devoted to the defence of the country.

7. Captain M'Intyre acted on this occasion as military adviser and aide-de-camp to the principal magistrate, and displayed a degree of presence of mind, and knowledge of his profession, totally unexpected by his uncle, who, recollecting his usual *insouciance* and impetuosity, gazed at him with astonishment from time to time, as he remarked the calm and steady manner in which he explained the various measures of precaution that his experience suggested, and gave directions for executing them.

8. He found the different corps in good order, considering the irregular materials of which they were composed, in great force of numbers, and high confidence and spirits. And so much did military experience at that moment overbalance all other claims to consequence, that even old Edie, instead of being left, like Diogenes at Sinope, to roll his tub when all around were preparing for defence, had the duty assigned him of superintending the serving out of the ammunition, which he executed with much discretion.

9. Two things were still anxiously expected—the presence of the Glenallan volunteers, who, in

consideration of the importance of that family, had been formed into a separate corps, and the arrival of the officer to whom the measures of defence on that coast had been committed by the commander-in-chief, and whose commission would entitle him to take upon himself the full disposal of the military force.

10. At length the bugles of the Glenallan yeomanry were heard, and the earl himself, to the surprise of all who knew his habits and state of health, appeared at their head in uniform. They formed a very handsome and well-mounted squadron, formed entirely out of the earl's Lowland tenants, and were followed by a regiment of five hundred men, completely equipped in the Highland dress, whom he had brought down from the upland glens, with their pipes playing in the van.

11. The clean and serviceable appearance of this band of feudal dependents called forth the admiration of Captain M'Intyre. The earl claimed, and obtained for himself and his followers, the post most likely to be that of danger, displayed great alacrity in making the necessary dispositions, and showed equal acuteness in discussing their propriety. Morning broke in upon the military councils of Fairport, while all concerned were still eagerly engaged in taking precautions for their defence.

12. At length a cry among the people announced, "There's the brave Major Neville come at last,

with another officer"; and their post-chaise and four drove into the square, amidst the huzzas of the volunteers and inhabitants. The magistrates, with their assessors of the lieutenancy, hastened to the door of their town-house to receive him.

13. The first words of the young officers were a positive assurance to all present, that the courage and zeal which they had displayed were entirely thrown away, unless in so far as they afforded an acceptable proof of their spirit and promptitude.

14. "The watchman at Halket-head," said Major Neville, "as we discovered by an investigation which we made in our route hither, was most naturally misled by a bonfire which some idle people had made on the hill above Glen-Withershins, just in the line of the beacon with which his corresponded."

Sir WALTER SCOTT.

(From "*The Antiquary*.")

in-di-vid'u-al-ly
ma'gis-tra-cy
de-fi'ci-en-cies
ac-qui-es'cence
u-nan'i-mous-ly

in-sou'ci-ance
im-pet-u-os'it-y
Di-o'ge-nes
Sin-o'pe
am-mu-ni'tion

anx'i-ous-ly
e-quipped'
a-lac'ri-ty
pro-pri'e-ty
pre-cau'tions

Par.

5. quartermasters, the officers whose business it is to see to the lodging or *quarters* of the troops.

„ billets, written directions appointing the soldiers their quarters.

„ forage, hay, oats, and other food for horses.

6. were devoted. The grammar is bad here. The subject (*substance*) of the verb is singular, but Scott uses

Par.

were as if the subject were "The substance of the wealthy and the persons," etc.

7. aide-de-camp, an officer on the staff of a commander.

„ insouciance, carelessness.

8. old Edie, a *bedesman* or beggar who had been a soldier.

„ Diogenes of Sinope, a Greek philosopher who is said to have lived in a tub in order to show he had risen above

- Par. the ordinary needs of
humanity.
11. feudal dependents, men who

looked to their landlord as
to a chief and commander.

Derivations, etc.

- Par.
1. witness, from *wit*, knowledge.
Explain the derivation.
 2. fife, another form of *pipe*.
 3. enemy, from Latin *in*, not,
amicus, friendly, *inimicus*,

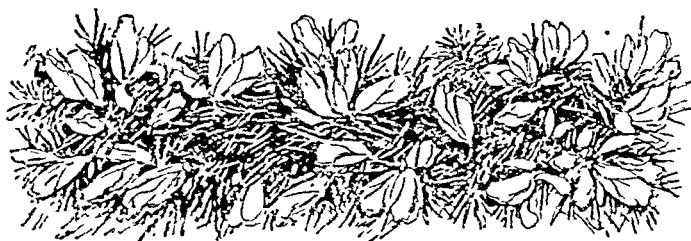
- Par.
- unfriendly, through the
French *ennemi*.
 11. alacrity, from Latin *alacer*,
cheerful.
 13. courage, from Latin *cor*, the
heart.

Oral Exercises.

1. Tell in your own words what arrangements were made at Fairport
for the troops.
2. Explain the cause of the false alarm.

Composition.

Write an essay on "The Volunteers."



47.—THE BELEAGUERED CITY.

1. I have read, in some old marvellous tale,
Some legend strange and vague,
That a midnight host of spectres pale
Beleaguered the walls of Prague.
2. Beside the Moldau's rushing stream,
With the wan moon overhead,
There stood, as in an awful dream,
The army of the dead.

3. White as a sea-fog, landward bound,
The spectral camp was seen,
And with a sorrowful, deep sound,
The river flowed between.
4. No other voice nor sound was there,
Nor drum nor sentry's pace;
The mist-like banners clasped the air,
As clouds with clouds embrace.
5. But, when the old cathedral bell
Proclaimed the morning prayer,
The white pavilions rose and fell
On the alarmed air.
6. Down the broad valley fast and far
The troubled army fled;
Uprose the glorious morning star:
The ghastly host was dead.
7. I have read in the marvellous heart of man,
That strange and mystic scroll,
That an army of phantoms, vast and wan,
Beleaguer the human soul.
8. Encamped beside Life's rushing stream,
In Fancy's misty light,
Gigantic shapes and shadows gleam
Portentous through the night.
9. Upon its midnight battle-ground
The spectral camp is seen,
And with a sorrowful, deep sound
Flows the River of Life between.

10. No other voice nor sound is there,
 In the army of the grave;
 No other challenge breaks the air,
 But the rushing of Life's wave.
11. And, when the solemn and deep church-bell
 Entreats the soul to pray,
 The midnight phantoms feel the spell,
 The shadows sweep away.
12. Down the broad Vale of Tears afar
 The spectral camp is fled;
 Faith shineth as a morning-star,
 Our ghastly fears are dead.

HENRY WADSWORTH LONGFELLOW.

mar'vel-lous
 spec'tres
 be-lea-guered

cath-e'dral
 pa-vil'ions
 gha-st'ly

phan'toms
 gi-gan'tic
 por-ten'tous

Ver.

1. beleaguered, besieged.
 „ Prague, the capital of
 Bohemia.
 2. Moldau, a tributary of the
 Elbe, on which Prague is
 built.
 5. pavilions, tents.

Ver.

- 7 scroll, a written roll of paper;
 here applied to the heart
 and its secrets.
 „ phantoms, here unfounded
 fears and doubts.
 10. challenge, the call of a sentry.

Derivations, etc.

Ver.

1. marvellous, from Latin *miror*,
 I wonder, *mirabilis*, wonder-
 ful, through French *mer-*
 veille, a wonder.
 „ legend, from Latin *lego*, I
 read, *legendum*, something
 to be read; originally
 applied to inscriptions, as
 on a coin, and then to
 tales.

Ver.

1. spectres, from Latin *specio*, I
 look; an appearance.
 „ beleaguered, from Dutch
 leger, German *lager*, a camp;
 not connected with *league*,
 an alliance, which comes
 from Latin *ligo*, I bind.
 2. army, from Latin *armatum*,
 armed, through French
 armée, an army.

Ver.

4. sentry, from Latin *semita*, a path; Old French *sente*, a path.

„ banner, connected with band.

„ embrace, from French *en*, in, *bras* (Latin *brachium*), the arm.

5. pavilion, from Latin *papilio*, a butterfly, French *pavillon*, a tent; so-called because spread out like the wings of a butterfly.

Ver.

5. alarmed, from Italian "*All' arme*," "To arms!"

10. challenged, from Latin *calumniator*, I accuse falsely. Notice the change of meaning.

11. church, from Greek *kyriakon*, the Lord's house, Old English *cirice*.

„ pray, from Latin *orator*, I pray.

Oral Exercises.

1. Give the substance of the legend Longfellow refers to.
2. How does Longfellow apply this to human life?

Composition.

Write an essay on "Courage."



48.—A STRANGE VISITOR.

[The following extract from "The Confessions of an English Opium-Eater" describes an incident that happened at Dove Cottage, Grasmere, where De Quincey lived for several years. See Lesson 42.]

1. One day a Malay knocked at my door. What business a Malay could have to transact amongst English mountains, I cannot conjecture; but possibly he was on his road to a seaport about forty miles distant.

2. The servant who opened the door to him was a young girl born and bred amongst the mountains, who had never seen an Asiatic dress of any sort; his turban, therefore, confounded her not a little; and as it turned out that his attainments in English were exactly of the same extent as hers in the Malay, there seemed to be an impassable gulf fixed between all communication of ideas, if either party had happened to possess any.

3. In this dilemma, the girl, recollecting the reputed learning of her master (and doubtless giving me credit for a knowledge of all the languages of the earth, besides, perhaps, a few of the lunar ones), came and gave me to understand that there was a sort of demon below, whom she clearly imagined that my art could exorcise from the house.

4. I did not immediately go down; but when I did, the group which presented itself, arranged as it was by accident, though not very elaborate, took hold of my fancy and my eye in a way that none of the statuesque attitudes exhibited in the ballets at the Opera House, though so ostentatiously complex, had ever done.

5. In a cottage kitchen, but panelled on the wall with dark wood that from age and rubbing resembled oak, and looking more like a rustic hall of entrance than a kitchen, stood the Malay—his turban and loose trousers of dingy white, relieved upon the dark panelling; he had placed

- Par.
1. English mountains, the Cumbrian mountains.
 - „ conjecture, guess at.
 3. dilemma, puzzle.
 - „ lunar ones, those of the moon.
 - „ exorcise, drive away.
 4. ostentatiously, showily.
 5. turban, headgear of cloth.
 - „ intrepidity, fearlessness.
 6. enamelled, covered with a shining paint or varnish.
 - „ veneered, covered with a thin layer.
 7. reverting, turning back.
 8. Anastasius, a once famous

- Par.
- novel, written by Hope, telling the story of an unscrupulous Greek adventurer.
 8. Mithridates, a “General History of Languages,” written by J. C. Adelung, a learned German, at the beginning of the nineteenth century.
 - „ Iliad, the name of a great Greek poem describing the war against Troy or Ilium.
 9. worshipped, that is, made signs of great respect.

Derivations, etc.

- Par.
2. confounded, from Latin *con*, with, *fundo*, I pour.
 3. demon, from Greek, *daimon*, a spirit.
 4. immediate, from Latin *in*, not, *medius*, the middle, that is without anything intervening.

- Par.
4. fancy, from Greek, *phaino*, I show. *Fancy* is shortened from *phantasy*.
 6. slavish, from the name of the Slavs or Slavonians, prisoners from whom were frequently made compulsory servants by their western neighbours.

Oral Exercises.

1. Tell the story in your own words.
2. Describe the scene.

Composition.

Write an essay on “Foreigners I have seen.”



49.—THE SERVICE OF THE EMPIRE.

[This is part of a speech delivered by Lord Rosebery to the students of Edinburgh University. He urges them to seek to serve their country.]

PART I.

1. The British Empire is not a centralised empire. It does not, as other empires, hinge on a single autocrat, or a single Parliament; but it is a vast collection of communities spread all over the world, many with their own Legislatures, but all with their own Governments, and, therefore, resting, in a degree which is known in no other

Par.

1. English mountains, the
Cumbrian mountains.
- „ conjecture, guess at.
3. dilemma, puzzle.
- „ lunar ones, those of the moon
- „ exorcise, drive away.
4. ostentatiously, showily.
5. turban, headgear of cloth.
- „ intrepidity, fearlessness.
6. enamelled, covered with a
shining paint or varnish.
- „ veneered, covered with a
thin layer.
7. reverting, turning back.
8. Anastasius, a once famous

Par.

- novel, written by Hope,
telling the story of an
unscrupulous Greek adventurer.
8. Mithridates, a “General
History of Languages,”
written by J. C. Adelung,
a learned German, at the
beginning of the nineteenth
century.
 - „ *Iliad*, the name of a great
Greek poem describing the
war against Troy or Ilium.
 9. worshipped, that is, made
signs of great respect.

Derivations, etc.

Par.

2. confounded, from Latin *con*,
with, *fundo*, I pour.
3. demon, from Greek, *daimon*,
a spirit.
4. immediate, from Latin *in*,
not, *medius*, the middle,
that is without anything
intervening.

Par.

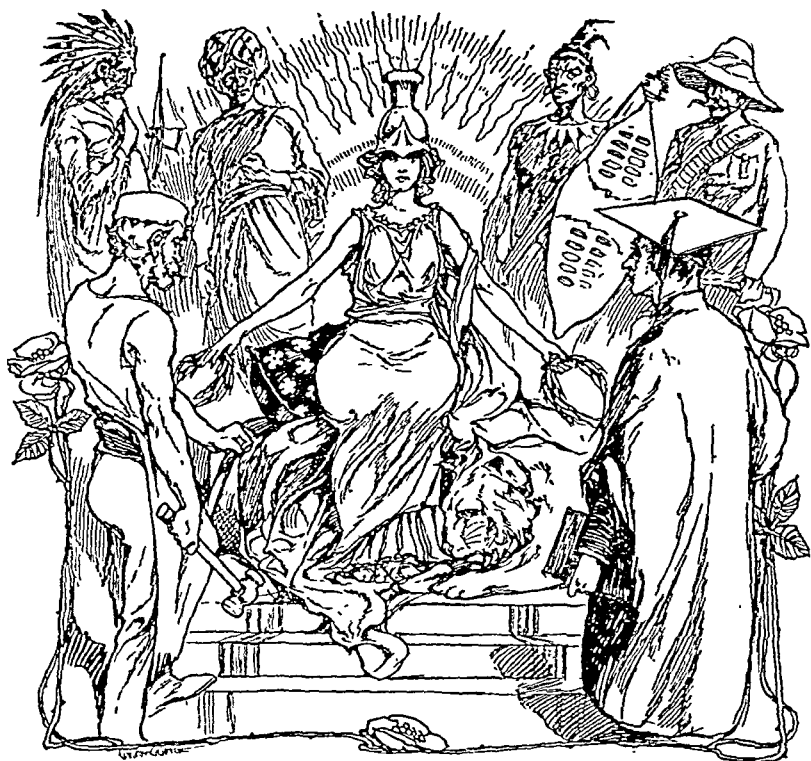
4. fancy, from Greek, *phaino*, I
show. *Fancy* is shortened
from phantasy.
6. slavish, from the name of
the Slavs or Slavonians,
prisoners from whom were
frequently made compulsory
servants by their western
neighbours.

Oral Exercises.

1. Tell the story in your own words.
2. Describe the scene.

Composition.

Write an essay on “Foreigners I have seen.”



49.—THE SERVICE OF THE EMPIRE.

[This is part of a speech delivered by Lord Rosebery to the students of Edinburgh University. He urges them to seek to serve their country.]

PART I.

1. The British Empire is not a centralised empire. It does not, as other empires, hinge on a single autocrat, or a single Parliament; but it is a vast collection of communities spread all over the world, many with their own Legislatures, but all with their own Governments, and, therefore, resting, in a degree which is known in no other

State of which history has record, on the intelligence and the character of the individuals who compose it.

2. Some empires have rested on armies and some on constitutions. It is the boast of the British Empire that it rests upon men—and for that reason it is that I speak to you to-night as men who are to have your share in the work of the Empire, small or great, humble or proud.

3. Now it is quite true that your share in that work may not be official, but even then I would ask, why not? There never was in the history of Great Britain, or, I suspect, of the world, so great a call as now upon the energies and intelligence of men for the public service.

4. Now, within Great Britain in my own memory, the change in that respect has been very remarkable. What was called the governing class—and which is to some extent the governing class still—when I was a boy had very simple public functions in comparison with those which devolve upon the present race. They went into Parliament, as a rule, and they had Quarter Sessions. But Parliament in those days was a very different business from what it is now.

5. The burden of Parliament has now indefinitely and almost hopelessly increased. That takes up for these islands some five hundred and seventy more or less trained intelligences. Then there is the House of Lords, which takes

up some five or six hundred more. But I do not wish to claim that the House of Lords takes up the whole time of its members; I merely wish to point out that that, again, takes a part of the time, at any rate, of some five or six hundred more of our governing class.

6. Then there is a new institution—the London County Council. That is a body whose work is not less absorbing than that of the House of Commons. It lasts much longer; it is much more continuous, and though not nearly so obtrusive, it is quite as sincere. Well, that consists of a small body of a hundred and thirty-eight members, who must all, who should all, be highly qualified for the function of governing a nation which is not smaller than many self-governing kingdoms.

7. There are the municipalities—great and small. These, no doubt, have to some extent always existed, but not in their present form. A new spirit has been breathed into these somewhat dry bones. The functions of a municipality are sought by men of the highest intelligence and they absorb a very great proportion of their time. And it is notable now to remark how many men in business plead as a just excuse from entering either the House of Commons or municipal work that they cannot spare the time from the necessary prosecution of their business which would enable them to join in those absorbing avocations.

8. There are County Councils, District Councils,

Africa—not self-governing Africa, but the rest of our Africa, with its territories, its spheres of influence, and so on, all requiring men to mould them into shape, not necessarily men belonging to the civil service or men of formula, but muscular Christians, who are ready to turn their hands to anything.

11. Then, besides that and beyond that, there are the outer-Britains, if I may so call them, the great commonwealths outside these islands which own the British Crown—whether Crown Colonies, in which case they require administrators, or self-governing Colonies, in which case they require the whole appurtenances of Parliament, Courts of Law, Ministers, and so forth. Then, outside that, again, there is the whole of our numerous diplomatic and Consular services.

LORD ROSEBERY.

(Adapted by permission from "The Scotsman's" report.)

cen-tra-lised'
le-gis-la-tures
of-fi-cial
en'er-gies

in-tel'li-gence
Par'lia-ment
mu-ni-ci-pal'it-ies
pro-se-cu'tion

in-cal'cul-ab-ly
ad-min-is-tra'tion
ap-pur'ten-ances
dip-lo-ma'tic

Par.

1. centralised Empire, an empire governed entirely from the capital.
- „ autocrat, an absolute ruler.
4. governing class, the part of the people from whom the rulers are drawn—generally the wealthier and more educated part.
6. a nation, London, which con-

Par.

- tains four and a half million people.
6. function, duties, work.
7. municipalities, towns governed by councils.
8. Government Departments, such as the Home Office, the Colonial Office, the War Office, the Admiralty, each of which does part of

- Par. the work of governing the country.
10. muscular Christians, men willing and able to do good work either with head or hand.

- Par. 11. Crown Colonies, colonies governed from London.
- „ appurtenances, equipment. establishment.

Derivations, etc.

- Par. 1. autocrat, from Greek *autos*, self, *crateo*, I rule. Give examples of other words derived from *autos* and *crateo* respectively.
2. degree, from Latin *de*, down, *gradus*, a step. Show that the idea of a step is present in all the meanings of degree.
3. energies, from Greek *en*, in, *ergon*, work.
9. cabinet, from Welsh *caban*, English *cabin*, a small

- Par. house. Cabinet originally meant a *small cabin*, then a *small or private room*, then a *private meeting*, then the *private meeting of the sovereign's advisers*, then these advisers as a body.
11. diplomatic, from Greek *diploös*, double. Hence *diploma*, a doubled or folded letter, a commission; *diplomatist*, an officer *commissioned* to act for his country.

Oral Exercises.

1. In what respect does Lord Rosebery say that the British Government differs from others?
2. What opportunities for patriotic work are open to Britons?

Composition.

Write an essay on "Love of Country."

50.—THE SERVICE OF THE EMPIRE.

PART II.

1. I do not suppose there ever was in the history of the world half the demand that there is at this hour within the British empire for young men of ability and skill and training to help to mould that empire into shape. Never were there so many paths of distinction open within that empire; and to those who would share in that task of empire-building, and who would do it not with the hope of amassing much riches, but in a high missionary spirit, never was there such an opportunity as opens at the present moment.

2. Of course, the base of all this tremendous work of Government is our unparalleled civil service. Our civil service is our glory and our pride. It is the admiration of all foreigners who see it, but it is much more the admiration of those who, as political Ministers, are called upon to see its working from within. They constitute the wheels and the springs on which moves the great Juggernaut car of the State, and if they once were to get out of order, it would be indeed an evil day for Great Britain.

3. There never was so great a demand as now for trained intelligence and trained character in our public service, and I should like to think that we of the Associated Societies will bear our part in it. Of course, most of you, I suppose,

have already chosen the professions that you mean to pursue, and I should by no means wish to see as the result of what I have said a general exodus from Edinburgh to the somewhat forbidding portals of the civil service examiners.

4. That is not my object, but I venture to point out that official duty is only a very small part of public duty, and that public work is by no means incompatible with other professions and other callings. I do not suppose I need remind you that Walter Scott was a sheriff, and that Robert Burns was an exciseman. But how often have I seen professional men clutch at an opportunity of serving their country, whether on a commission or on a committee, or something of that kind—clutch at it though knowing that it will involve a great waste of time, and therefore a great loss of money—clutch at it as an honour which they cannot sufficiently prize.

5. And I confess, when I see the enormous abilities that are given to our civil service and to our public service, either for no remuneration at all or for remuneration incalculably smaller than the same abilities would have earned in any other calling or profession, I am inclined to think that the public spirit in this country was never higher or brighter than it is at present.

6. Let me tell you two curious stories which happened within my experience or knowledge with regard to this anxiety to serve the public. A friend of mine, who had a high post in the civil service, was asked not so very long ago to



LORD ROSEBERY.

undertake some task which was peculiarly congenial to him, and for which he was peculiarly fitted; but he refused it without hesitation, and he gave as his reason this. He said—"When I was appointed to my present post at a very ample remuneration I knew nothing of the work, and it was some years before I could learn the work to do it to my satisfaction. Now I have learned it, I am in a position in some way to repay the State for what it has done for me, and I shall not leave my post till I feel I have in some degree discharged that debt."

7. Well, now, a much longer time ago, before I

can remember, there was one of the greatest and the wealthiest, and at the same time one of the most dissipated of the English nobility, who, after a life spent, as I say, in a very frivolous manner, was suddenly seized and bitten with the anxiety to occupy some public post under his Government to do some public work; and he applied to the Minister of the day for some quite subordinate post, as he wished to do something to redeem his life. Well, the post was refused, and his life was unredeemed.

8. I give that to you as a specimen, not so uncommon as it may seem, of the anxiety of men, who had not done much in their youth, as they approached middle life to be of some use to their country before they die. After all, gentlemen, we are bound to remember this—that we do owe something to our country besides rates and taxes.

9. Other countries have compulsory military service. We are released from that; and if only on that consideration I think that we should be prepared to do something for the country which has done so much for us. Even if there is no public work ready to your hand, there are innumerable ways in which we can serve our country, however humbly and however indirectly. I only mention in passing the Volunteer movement.

10. But there are social methods, literary methods, aye and even athletic methods—because I am one of those who believe that one of the subordinate methods of welding the Empire

together, and even of welding the English-speaking races together, is by those inter-colonial athletic contests, and contests of athletics with the United States—which are developing so much in these days. But what I want to impress upon you is this, that if you keep before you the high motive of serving your country, it will ennoble the humblest acts that you do for her. The man who breaks stones on the road, after all, is serving his country in some way. He is making her roads better for her commerce and her traffic, and if a man asks himself sincerely and constantly the question—"What can I do, in however small a way, to serve my country?"—he will not be long in finding an answer.

LORD ROSEBERRY.

(Adapted by permission from "The Scotsman's" report.)

mis-sion-ar-y
un-par'al-leled

in-com-pat-i-ble
suf-fi-cient-ly

in-cal-cu-la-bly
sub-ord'in-ate

Par.

2. unparalleled, unequalled.
3. Associated Societies, of Edinburgh University.

Par.

5. remuneration, payment.
6. congenial, pleasing.

Derivations, etc.

Par.

2. tremendous, from Latin *tremo*, I tremble, applied to something vast and fearful.
- „ unparalleled, from Greek *para*, beside, *allēla*, one another.

Par.

2. political, from Greek *polis*, a city, *politēs*, a citizen; because originally cities were separate states.
3. exodus, from Greek *ex*, out of, *hodos*, a way.

Oral Exercises.

1. Give two examples to show how people have been anxious to serve their country.
2. Show that every one may serve his country.

Composition.

Write an essay on "Our Duties to Others."



ABRAHAM LINCOLN.

51.—PRESIDENT LINCOLN'S SECOND INAUGURAL ADDRESS.

[In 1860 Abraham Lincoln was elected President of the United States of America. He was well known to be in favour of the abolition of slavery; and before he entered on office in March 1861, many of the Southern States of the Union seceded; that is, they declared that they were no longer part of the United States. More seceded after Lincoln assumed the government, and the four years of his term were chiefly occupied in the conduct of a terrible civil war, during the course of which Lincoln proclaimed the liberation of the slaves. He was re-elected in 1864, and on beginning his second term of office on 4th March 1865, he delivered the following address.]

1. Fellow Countrymen:—At this second appearing to take the oath of the presidential office, there is less occasion for an extended address than there was at the first. Then, a statement,

somewhat in detail, of a course to be pursued seemed fitting and proper. Now, at the expiration of four years, during which public declarations have been constantly called forth on every point and phase of the great contest which still absorbs the attention and engrosses the energies of the nation, little that is new could be presented.

2. The progress of our arms, upon which all else chiefly depends, is as well known to the public as to myself; and it is, I trust, reasonably satisfactory and encouraging to all. With high hope for the future, no prediction in regard to it is ventured.

3. On the occasion corresponding to this four years ago, all thoughts were anxiously directed to an impending civil war. All dreaded it—all sought to avert it. While the inaugural address was being delivered from this place, devoted altogether to *saving* the Union without war, insurgent agents were in the city seeking to *destroy* it without war—seeking to dissolve the Union, and divide the effects, by negotiation.

4. Both parties deprecated war; but one of them would *make* war rather than let the nation survive; and the other would *accept* war rather than let it perish. And the war came.

5. One-eighth of the whole population were coloured slaves, not distributed generally over the Union, but localised in the southern part of it. These slaves constituted a peculiar and powerful interest. All knew that this interest



ABRAHAM LINCOLN.

51.—PRESIDENT LINCOLN'S SECOND INAUGURAL ADDRESS.

[In 1860 Abraham Lincoln was elected President of the United States of America. He was well known to be in favour of the abolition of slavery ; and before he entered on office in March 1861, many of the Southern States of the Union seceded ; that is, they declared that they were no longer part of the United States. More seceded after Lincoln assumed the government, and the four years of his term were chiefly occupied in the conduct of a terrible civil war, during the course of which Lincoln proclaimed the liberation of the slaves. He was re-elected in 1864, and on beginning his second term of office on 4th March 1865, he delivered the following address.]

1. Fellow Countrymen:—At this second appearing to take the oath of the presidential office, there is less occasion for an extended address than there was at the first. Then, a statement,

somewhat in detail, of a course to be pursued seemed fitting and proper. Now, at the expiration of four years, during which public declarations have been constantly called forth on every point and phase of the great contest which still absorbs the attention and engrosses the energies of the nation, little that is new could be presented.

2. The progress of our arms, upon which all else chiefly depends, is as well known to the public as to myself; and it is, I trust, reasonably satisfactory and encouraging to all. With high hope for the future, no prediction in regard to it is ventured.

3. On the occasion corresponding to this four years ago, all thoughts were anxiously directed to an impending civil war. All dreaded it—all sought to avert it. While the inaugural address was being delivered from this place, devoted altogether to *saving* the Union without war, insurgent agents were in the city seeking to *destroy* it without war—seeking to dissolve the Union, and divide the effects, by negotiation.

4. Both parties deprecated war; but one of them would *make* war rather than let the nation survive; and the other would *accept* war rather than let it perish. And the war came.

5. One-eighth of the whole population were coloured slaves, not distributed generally over the Union, but localised in the southern part of it. These slaves constituted a peculiar and powerful interest. All knew that this interest

was, somehow, the cause of the war. To strengthen, perpetuate, and extend this interest was the object for which the insurgents would rend the Union, even by war; while the govern-



PRESIDENT LINCOLN VISITING THE FEDERAL CAMP.

ment claimed no right to do more than to restrict the territorial enlargement of it.

6. Neither party expected for the war the magnitude or the duration which it has already attained. Neither anticipated that the *cause* of the conflict might cease with, or even before, the

conflict itself should cease. Each looked for an easier triumph, and a result less fundamental and astounding.

7. Both read the same Bible, and pray to the same God; and each invokes His aid against the other. It may seem strange that any men should dare to ask a just God's assistance in wringing their bread from the sweat of other men's faces; but let us judge not, that we be not judged. The prayers of both could not be answered—that of neither has been answered fully.

8. The Almighty has His own purposes. “Woe unto the world because of offences! for it must needs be that offences come; but woe to that man by whom the offence cometh.” If we shall suppose that American slavery is one of those offences which, in the providence of God, must needs come, but which, having continued through His appointed time, He now wills to remove, and that He gives to both North and South this terrible war, as the woe due to those by whom the offence came, shall we discern therein any departure from those divine attributes which the believers in a living God always ascribe to Him?

9. Fondly do we hope—fervently do we pray—that this mighty scourge of war may speedily pass away. Yet, if God wills that it continue until all the wealth piled by the bondman's two hundred and fifty years of unrequited toil shall be sunk, and until every drop of blood drawn

with the lash shall be paid by another drawn with the sword, as was said three thousand years ago, so still it must be said, "The judgments of the Lord are true and righteous altogether."

10. With malice toward none; with charity for all; with firmness in the right, as God gives us to see the right, let us strive on to finish the work we are in, to bind up the nation's wounds; to care for him who shall have borne the battle, and for his widow, and his orphan—to do all which may achieve and cherish a just and a lasting peace among ourselves, and with all nations.

pres-i-den'tial
oc-ca'si-on
ex-pi-ra'tion
sat-is-fac'to-ry
in-aug'-ur-al

ne-go-ti-a'tion
dep're-ca-ted
dis-trib'u-ted
lo'-ca-lised
per-pet'u-ate

ter-ri-to'-ri-al
mag-ni-tude
an-ti'-ci-pa-ted
fun-da-men'tal
at'tri-butes

Par.

1. second appearing, Lincoln delivered his first inaugural address on 4th March 1861.
- „ the great contest, the civil war, still going on when Lincoln spoke, though the Northern armies were now clearly to be victorious.
3. impending, threatening.
- „ inaugural address, address at the beginning.
4. deprecated, hoped against, expressed a wish against.
5. localised, kept in one place or part.
- „ perpetuate, make lasting or permanent.

Par.

5. territorial enlargement. The people of the Northern States wished to keep slavery out of the new states, those of the South wished to bring it in there.
6. with. This preposition has no object. The words "should cease" were apparently added on the suggestion of the moment.
- „ fundamental, thorough.
8. "Woe unto the world," etc., from Matt. xviii. 7.
- „ attributes, qualities.
9. "The judgments," etc., from Ps. xix 9.

Derivations, etc.

Par.

1. engross, from French *en*, in, *gros*, large; to take the whole of anything.

Par

3. corresponding, from Latin *con*, with, *re* back, *spondeo*, I answer

Par.

9. fervently, from Latin *ferveo*,
I boil. Explain the deriva-
tion.

Par.

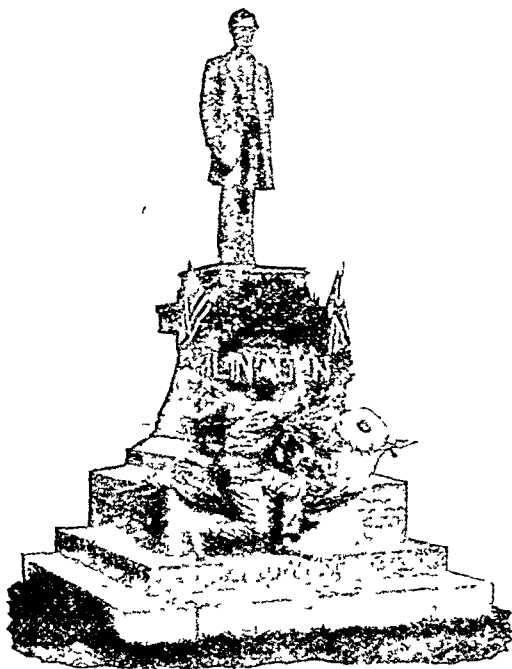
10. charity, from Latin *carus*,
dear, *caritas*, affection.
,, orphan, from Greek *orphanos*,
deprived of.

Oral Exercises.

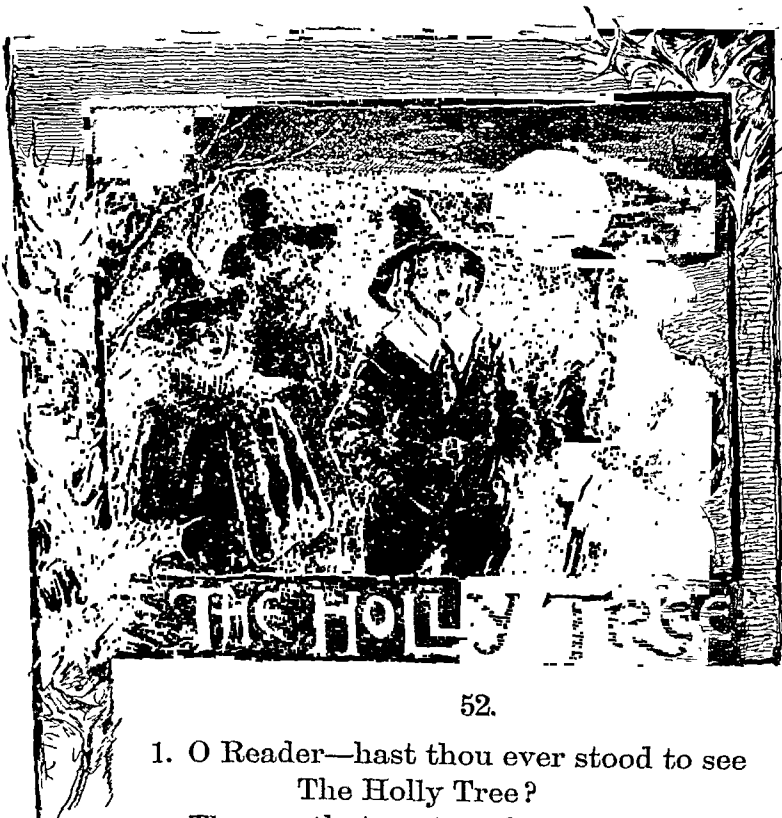
1. Why does Lincoln say that his second inaugural address need not be so long as his first?
2. What does he say of the intention of the nation for the future?

Composition.

Write an essay on "Slavery."



STATUE OF LINCOLN IN EDINBURGH.



52.

1. O Reader—hast thou ever stood to see
The Holly Tree?

The eye that contemplates it well perceives
Its glossy leaves,
Ordered by an intelligence so wise
As might confound the Atheist's sophistries.

2. Below, a circling fence, its leaves are seen
Wrinkled and keen;
No grazing cattle through their prickly round
Can reach to wound;
But as they grow where nothing is to fear,
Smooth and unarmed the pointless leaves
appear.

-
3. I love to view these things with curious eyes,
And moralise :
And in this wisdom of the Holly Tree
Can emblems see
Wherewith perchance to make a pleasant
rhyme,
One which may profit in the after time.
4. Thus, though abroad perchance I might appear
Harsh and austere,
To those who on my leisure would intrude
Reserved and rude,
Gentle at home amid my friends I'd be
Like the high leaves upon the Holly Tree.
5. And should my youth, as youth is apt I know,
Some harshness show,
All vain asperities I day by day
Would wear away,
Till the smooth temper of my age should be
Like the high leaves upon the Holly Tree.
6. And as when all the summer trees are seen
So bright and green,
The Holly leaves a sober hue display
Less bright than they,
But when the bare and wintry woods we see,
What then so cheerful as the Holly Tree?
7. So serious should my youth appear among
The thoughtless throng,
So would I seem amid the young and gay
More grave than they,

That in my age as cheerful I might be
As the green winter of the Holly Tree.

ROBERT SOUTHEY.

con'tem-plates *

soph'is-tries

as-per'i-ties

Ver.

1. atheist, one who does not believe in a God.
- „, sophistries, seemingly forcible but really feeble arguments.
3. moralise, draw lessons from.
4. austere, stern. Southey does

Ver.

- not mean to inculcate rudeness, but merely quiet reserve with strangers.
5. asperities, roughnesses, harshnesses.

Derivations, etc.

Ver.

1. Holly, from an Old English word meaning *sharp* or *pointed*; sometimes supposed to be from *holy*. The latter derivation is connected with the name *holy thorn*, sometimes given to the tree; and with the belief that the thorns were a miraculous commemoration

Ver.

- of Christ's crown of thorns; and the red berries emblems of his blood.
1. atheist, from Greek *a*, without, *theos*, a god.
 - „, sophistries, from Greek *sophos*, wise, *sophistes*, a sophist, one who pretended to be a teacher of wisdom.
 3. curious, from Latin *cura*, care.

Oral Exercises.

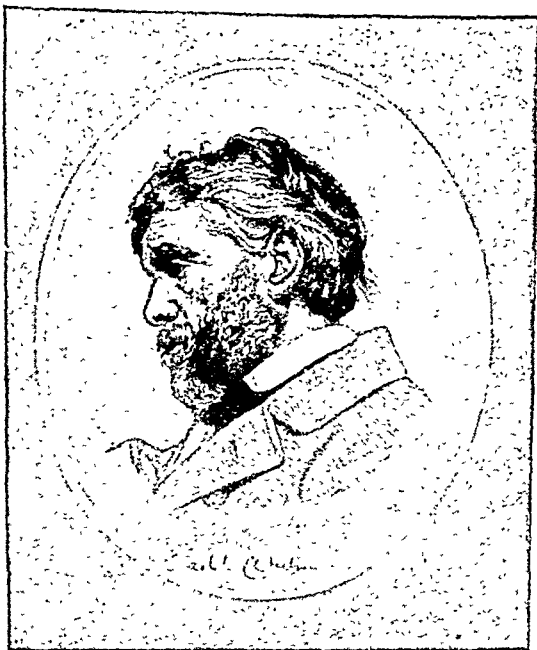
1. What is the peculiarity of the holly leaves?
2. What lesson does Southey draw from the absence of thorns on the higher leaves of the holly tree?
3. What lesson does he draw from the leaves of the holly being green in winter?

Composition.

Write an essay on "Trees."

* Usually with the accent on the *second* syllable.





THOMAS CARLYLE.

53.—WORKERS.

[In the following passage Carlyle speaks of the excellence and glory of self-sacrificing work. He classes together the hard-worked labourer in manual occupations, and the man whose toil is of the soul and spirit. He calls the first honourable and dignified even in his poverty, because without his labour man could not live in comfort, or even at all. The second he praises for his willing sacrifice of himself. Notice how Carlyle uses capitals for the sake of emphasis.]

1. Two men I honour, and no third. First, the toilworn Craftsman that with earth-made Implement laboriously conquers the Earth, and makes her man's.

2. Venerable to me is the hard Hand; crooked, coarse; wherein notwithstanding lies a cunning virtue, indefeasibly royal, as of the Sceptre of

That in my age as cheerful I might be
As the green winter of the Holly Tree.

ROBERT SOUTHEY.

con'tem-plates *

soph'is-tries

as-per'i-ties

Ver.

1. atheist, one who does not believe in a God.
- „ sophistries, seemingly forcible but really feeble arguments.
3. moralise, draw lessons from.
4. austere, stern. Southey does

Ver.

- not mean to inculcate rudeness, but merely quiet reserve with strangers.
5. asperities, roughnesses, harshnesses.

Derivations, etc.

Ver.

1. Holly, from an Old English word meaning *sharp* or *pointed*; sometimes supposed to be from *holy*. The latter derivation is connected with the name *holy thorn*, sometimes given to the tree; and with the belief that the thorns were a miraculous commemoration

Ver.

- of Christ's crown of thorns; and the red berries emblems of his blood.
1. atheist, from Greek *a*, without, *theos*, a god.
 - „ sophistries, from Greek *sophos*, wise, *sophistes*, a sophist, one who pretended to be a teacher of wisdom.
 3. curious, from Latin *cura*, care.

Oral Exercises.

1. What is the peculiarity of the holly leaves?
2. What lesson does Southey draw from the absence of thorns on the higher leaves of the holly tree?
3. What lesson does he draw from the leaves of the holly being green in winter?

Composition.

Write an essay on "Trees."

* Usually with the accent on the *second* syllable.





THOMAS CARLYLE.

53.—WORKERS.

[In the following passage Carlyle speaks of the excellence and glory of self-sacrificing work. He classes together the hard-worked labourer in manual occupations, and the man whose toil is of the soul and spirit. He calls the first honourable and dignified even in his poverty, because without his labour man could not live in comfort, or even at all. The second he praises for his willing sacrifice of himself. Notice how Carlyle uses capitals for the sake of emphasis.]

1. Two men I honour, and no third. First, the toilworn Craftsman that with earth-made Implement laboriously conquers the Earth, and makes her man's.

2. Venerable to me is the hard Hand; crooked, coarse; wherein notwithstanding lies a cunning virtue, indefeasibly royal, as of the Sceptre of

this Planet. Venerable too is the rugged face, all weather-tanned, besoiled, with its rude intelligence; for it is the face of a Man living manlike.

3. Oh, but the more venerable for thy rudeness, and even because we must pity as well as love thee! Hardly-entreated Brother! For us was thy back so bent, for us were thy straight limbs and fingers so deformed: thou wert our Conscript, on whom the lot fell, and fighting our battles wert so marred.

4. For in thee too lay a god-created Form, but it was not to be unfolded; encrusted must it stand with the thick adhesions and defacements of Labour: and thy body, like thy soul, was not to know freedom. Yet toil on, toil on: *thou art* in thy duty, be out of it who may; thou toilest for the altogether indispensable, for daily bread.

5. A second man I honour, and still more highly: Him who is seen toiling for the spiritually indispensable; not daily bread, but the bread of Life. Is not he too in his duty; endeavouring towards inward Harmony; revealing this, by act or by word, through all his outward endeavours, be they high or low? Highest of all, when his outward and his inward endeavour are one, when we can name him Artist; not earthly Craftsman only, but inspired Thinker, who with heaven-made Implement conquers Heaven for us!

6. If the poor and humble toil that we have

Food, must not the high and glorious toil for him in return, that he have Light, have Guidance, Freedom, Immortality?—These two, in all their degrees, I honour: all else is chaff and dust, which let the wind blow whither it listeth.

7. Unspeakably touching is it, however, when I find both dignities united; and he that must toil outwardly for the lowest of man's wants, is also toiling inwardly for the highest. Sublimier in this world know I nothing than a Peasant Saint, could such now anywhere be met with. Such a one will take thee back to Nazareth itself; thou wilt see the splendour of Heaven spring forth from the humblest depths of Earth, like a light shining in great darkness.

THOMAS CARLYLE.

(From "*Sartor Resartus*.")

im'ple-ment
la-bo'ri-ous-ly
in-de-feas'ib-ly

ad-he'sions
in-dis-pen'sa-ble
spir-i-tu-al-ly

en-deav'our
dig-ni-ties
splend'our

Par.

1. craftsman, tradesman.
- „ conquers the Earth and makes her man's, makes use of natural productions for human purposes.
2. cunning, skilful.
- „ indefeasibly, unalterably, undeniably.
- „ royal, as of the Sceptre of this Planet. As a king rules his subjects, so a workman rules nature.
- „ rude intelligence, imperfect power of thought.
3. entreated, used.
- „ for us was, etc., because the

Par.

- work of the commonest labourer is for the benefit of all mankind.
3. our Conscript on whom the lot fell. A conscript is a person chosen by law to be a soldier. Here Carlyle speaks of manual labourers as soldiers in the battle for existence.
4. it was not to be unfolded. Very severe labour prevents the full development of the faculties of the mind.
5. the spiritually indispensable, what is required for the

- Par. life of the spirit, as food is required for the life of the body.
5. endeavouring towards inward Harmony, seeking for truth.

- Par. 5. heaven-made Implement, the powers of the mind.
- „ conquers Heaven for us, gives us knowledge of God.

Derivations, etc.

- Par. 1. craftsman, from Old English *craft*, skill, trade. In *handicraft* we see the same force; while in *craft* itself, and *crafty*, the word implies cunning rather than skill.
2. cunning, from Old English *cunnan*, to know; con-

- Par. needed with *can*, *know*, and the Scottish word *ken*.
2. virtue, from Latin *vir*, a man; *virtus*, valour, virtue.
- „ planet, from Greek *planetes*, a wanderer, because the planets appear to wander or move among the other stars.

Oral Exercises.

1. Put the first sentence into your own words.
2. Why does Carlyle say that the work-worn face of a labourer is venerable?
3. Describe the true work of the mental toiler according to Carlyle.
4. Describe the "Peasant Saint."

Composition.

Write an essay on "Work."



CHANGING THE KEYS.

54.—QUEEN MARY'S ESCAPE FROM LOCHLEVEN.

[After Mary Queen of Scots surrendered to her subjects at Carberry Hill, she was forced to abdicate, and was confined in Lochleven Castle, situated on a small island in the lake. In his novel *The Abbot* Sir Walter Scott tells how she escaped. Roland Græme, her page, had a bunch of keys made, and intended to substitute them at the first opportunity for the genuine keys of the Castle, which were every night given into the charge of Lady Douglas, the wife of the owner of Lochleven Castle. The story, as Scott tells it, is not historical.]

PART I.

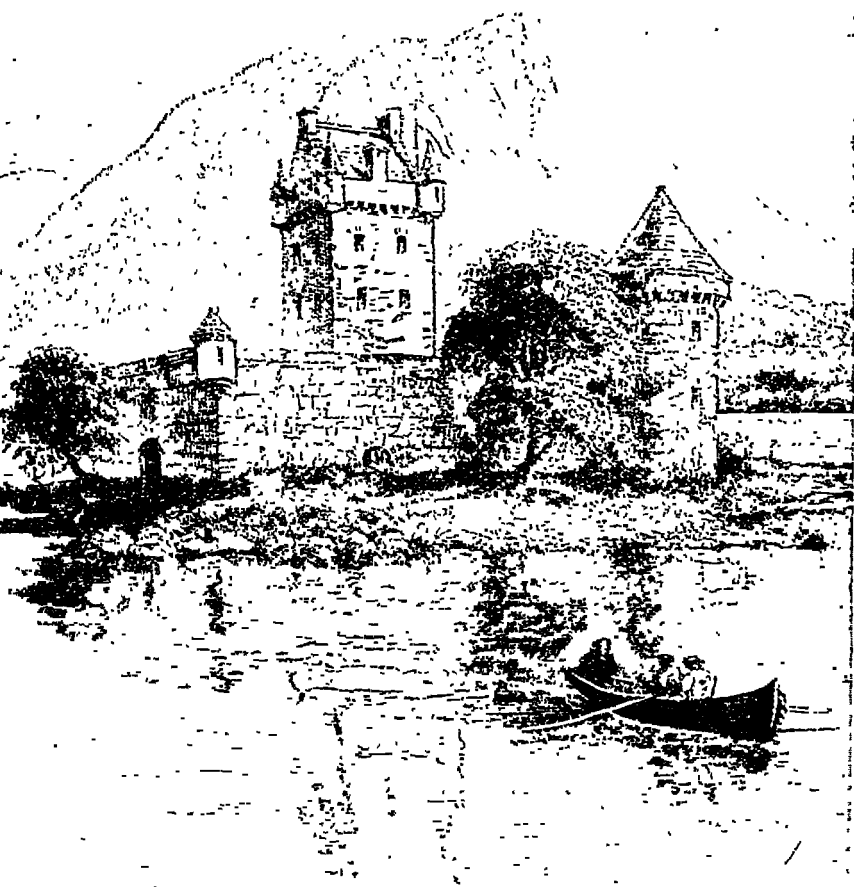
1. The keys had, with the wonted ceremonial, been presented to the Lady Lochleven. She stood with her back to the casement, which, like that of the queen's apartment, commanded a view of Kinross, with the church, which stands at some distance from the town, and nearer to the lake, then connected with the town by straggling cottages.

2. With her back to this casement, then, and her face to the table, on which the keys lay for an instant while she tasted the various dishes which were placed there, stood the Lady of Lochleven, more provokingly intent than usual—so at least it seemed to her prisoners—upon the huge and heavy bunch of iron, the implements of their restraint.

3. Just when, having finished her ceremony as taster of the queen's table, she was about to take up the keys, the page, who stood beside her, and had handed her the dishes in succession, looked sideways to the churchyard, and exclaimed he saw corpse-candles in the churchyard. The Lady of Lochleven was not without a touch, though a slight one, of the superstitions of the time; the fate of her sons made her alive to omens, and a corpse-light, as it was called, in the family burial-place boded death.

4. She turned her head towards the casement—saw a distant glimmering—forgot her charge for one second, and in that second were lost the whole fruits of her former vigilance. The page held the forged keys under his cloak, and with great dexterity exchanged them for the real ones.

5. His utmost address could not prevent a slight clash as he took up the latter bunch. "Who touches the keys?" said the lady; and while the page answered that the sleeve of his cloak had stirred them, she looked round, and



LOCHLEVEN CASTLE (RESTORED).

lies beneath the wall, too close under the islet to be seen by the warder, but I fear she will hardly escape his notice in putting off again."

"The darkness," said the page, "and our profound silence, may take her off unobserved, as she came in."

14. "Then bring the queen," said the Abbot, "and I will call Henry Seyton to assist them to the boat."

On tiptoe, with noiseless step and suppressed breath, trembling at every rustle of their own apparel, one after another the fair prisoners glided down the winding stair, under the guidance of Roland Græme, and were received at the wicket-gate by Henry Seyton and the churchman.

Sir WALTER SCOTT.

(From "*The Abb t.*")

cer-e-mo'ni-al
im'ple-ments
vi'gi-lance

dex-ter'i-ty
gen'u-ine
sove'reign

com-mu'ni-cate
sup-pressed'
gui'dance

Par.

1. ceremonial, forms.
3. corpse-candles, lights seen in churchyards, and supposed to foretell death.

Par.

3. superstitions, unreasonable belief in wonders.
4. dexterity, skill.
9. jack, buffcoat.
11. kent, push or pole the boat.

Derivations, etc.

Par.

2. provokingly, from Latin *pro*, forth, and *voco*, I call. To provoke was to call forth or summon in general, and then to call forth anger.
- „ prisoners, from Latin *prehendo* (*prehens-um* or *prens-um*), I seize.
3. page, from Greek *paidion*, a

Par.

- little boy. The other word "page" is from Latin *pagina*, a page, or *pango*, I fasten.
3. corpse, from Latin *corpus*, a body. In earlier English it was applied to a living as well as to a dead body.

Par.

4. glimmer, connected with
gleam.

„ dexterity, literally “right-
handedness,” from Latin
dexter, the right hand.

5. clash, from the sound. Give

Par.

other examples of words
formed from the sound.

7. liege, from Latin *ligo*, I tie;
the Sovereign to whom one
is bound by duty.

Oral Exercises.

1. How did Roland Græme get possession of the keys?
2. Describe the arrival of the boat.

Composition.

Write an essay on “Mary, Queen of Scots.”



55.—QUEEN MARY'S ESCAPE FROM LOCHLEVEN.

PART II.

1. Catherine Seyton, who well knew the garden path, tripped on before like a sylph, rather leading the Abbot than receiving assistance—the queen, her native spirit prevailing over female fear, and a thousand painful reflections, moved steadily forward, by the assistance of Henry Seyton.

2. The door of the garden, which communicated with the shore of the islet, yielded to one of the keys of which Roland had possessed himself, although not until he had tried several—a moment of anxious terror and expectation. The ladies were then partly led, partly carried, to

lies beneath the wall, too close under the islet to be seen by the warder, but I fear she will hardly escape his notice in putting off again."

"The darkness," said the page, "and our profound silence, may take her off unobserved, as she came in."

14. "Then bring the queen," said the Abbot, "and I will call Henry Seyton to assist them to the boat."

On tiptoe, with noiseless step and suppressed breath, trembling at every rustle of their own apparel, one after another the fair prisoners glided down the winding stair, under the guidance of Roland Græme, and were received at the wicket-gate by Henry Seyton and the churchman.

Sir WALTER SCOTT.

(From "*The Abb t.*")

cer-e-mo'ni-al
im'ple-ments
vi-gi-lance

dex-ter'i-ty
gen'u-ine
sove'reign

com-mu'ni-cate
sup-pressed'
gui-dance

Par.

1. ceremonial, forms.
3. corpse-candles, lights seen in churchyards, and supposed to foretell death.

Par.

3. superstitions, unreasonable belief in wonders.
4. dexterity, skill.
9. jack, buffcoat.
11. kent, push or pole the boat.

Derivations, etc.

Par.

2. provokingly, from Latin *pro*, forth, and *voco*, I call. To provoke was to call forth or summon in general, and then to call forth anger.
- ∴ prisoners, from Latin *prehendo* (*prehens-um* or *prens-um*), I seize.
3. page, from Greek *paidion*, a

Par.

- little boy. The other word "page" is from Latin *pagina*, a page, or *pango*, I fasten.
3. corpse, from Latin *corpus*, a body. In earlier English it was applied to a living as well as to a dead body.

Par.		Pal.
4. glimmer, connected with <i>gleam.</i>		other examples of words formed from the sound.
„ dexterity, literally “right- handedness,” from Latin <i>dexter</i> , the right hand.		7. liege, from Latin <i>ligo</i> , I tie; the Sovereign to whom one is bound by duty.
5. clash, from the sound. Give		

Oral Exercises.

1. How did Roland Grème get possession of the keys ?
2. Describe the arrival of the boat.

Composition.

Write an essay on “ Mary, Queen of Scots.”



55.—QUEEN MARY'S ESCAPE FROM LOCHLEVEN.

PART II.

1. Catherine Seyton, who well knew the garden path, tripped on before like a sylph, rather leading the Abbot than receiving assistance—the queen, her native spirit prevailing over female fear, and a thousand painful reflections, moved steadily forward, by the assistance of Henry Seyton.

2. The door of the garden, which communicated with the shore of the islet, yielded to one of the keys of which Roland had possessed himself, although not until he had tried several moment of anxious terror and expectation. The ladies were then partly led, partly carried, to

treason!" rung the bell of the castle, and discharged his harquebuss at the boat.

8. The ladies crowded on each other like startled wild-fowl, at the flash and report of the piece, while the men urged the rowers to the utmost speed. They heard more than one ball whiz



THROWING THE KEYS INTO THE LOCH.

along the surface of the lake, at no great distance from their little bark; and from the lights which glanced like meteors from window to window, it was evident the whole castle was alarmed, and their escape discovered.

9. "Pull!" again exclaimed Seyton; "stretch to your oars, or I will spur you to the task with

my dagger—they will launch a boat immediately.”

“That is cared for,” said Roland; “I locked gate and wicket on them when I went back, and no boat will stir from the island this night, if doors of good oak and bolts of iron can keep men within stone walls.—And now I resign my office of porter of Loch Leven, and give the keys to the Kelpie’s keeping.”

10. As the heavy keys plunged in the lake, the Abbot, who till then had been repeating his prayers, exclaimed, “Now, bless thee, my son! for thy ready prudence puts shame on us all.”

“I knew,” said Mary, drawing her breath more freely, as they were now out of reach of the musketry—“I knew my squire’s truth, promptitude, and sagacity.”

11. The dialogue was here interrupted by a shot or two from one of those small pieces of artillery called falconets, then used in defending castles. The shot was too vague to have any effect, but the broader flash, the deeper sound, the louder return which was made by the midnight echoes of Bennarty, terrified and imposed silence on the liberated prisoners. The boat was alongside of a rude quay or landing-place, running out from a garden of considerable extent, ere any of them again attempted to speak.

Sir WALTER SCOTT.

(From “*The Abbot.*”)

sylph
ex-pec-ta'tion
pru'dence
in-trac'ta-ble

sup-pressed'
ap-pre-hen'sion
har-que-buss
im-me'di-ate-ly

promp'ti-tude
sa-ga-ci-ty
fal-co-nets
lib'er-a-ted

Par.

1. sylph, a spirit of the air.
4. intractable, obstinate.
5. trim the vessel, so that it is not too deep in the water or too high out of it at any part.
6. poppy-porridge, some sleep-producing food, such as one might suppose a dish of poppies to be.
7. harquebuss, old-fashioned musket.

Par.

9. give the keys to the Kelpie's keeping, throw the keys into the water. Kelpies were supposed to be water spirits who ruled beneath lakes and rivers.
11. dialogue, conversation.
- „ Bennarty or Benartie, the steep hill on the south shore of Loch Leven.

Derivations, etc.

Par.

1. reflections, from Latin *re*, back, and *flecto* (*flexum*), I bend. A reflection is a *bending* of one's thoughts to reconsider a subject.
2. couched, from French *coucher*, to lay down, from Latin *colloco*, I set down.
3. packet, diminutive of *pack*. Give similar examples of diminutives. See lesson 47.

Par.

3. false, from Latin *fallo* (*fulsum*), I deceive.
4. imploringly, from Latin *im*, in, and *ploro*, I weep.
- „ deliverer, from Latin *de*, down, and *liber*, free.
7. sentinel, from Latin *scmita* (French *sente*), a path; a soldier with a prescribed path or beat.
11. vague, from Latin *ragus*, wandering.

Oral Exercises.

1. Describe Seyton's attempt to desert Roland Greeme.
2. What happened when the sentinel discovered the escape?
3. How did Roland prevent pursuit?

Composition.

Write an essay on "My Favourite Author."

or "My Favourite Character in History."

or "My Favourite Character in Fiction."

READINGS FROM SHAKESPEARE
AND MILTON.

56.—HOTSPUR'S EXCUSE.

[Henry Percy, or Hotspur, who had gained the battle of Homildon Hill against the Scots, was accused of having refused to yield his prisoners to the King's officer. He answers the charge in the following lines.]

My liege, I did deny no prisoners.

But, I remember, when the fight was done,

When I was dry with rage, and extreme toil,

Breathless and faint, leaning upon my sword,

Came there a certain lord, neat, trimly
dress'd, 5

Fresh as a bridegroom; and his chin, new
reap'd,

Shew'd like a stubble-land at harvest-home;

He was perfumed like a milliner;

And 'twixt his finger and his thumb he held

A pouncet-box, which ever and anon 10

He gave his nose, and took 't away again;—

Who, therewith angry, when it next came
there,

Took it in snuff:—and still he smil'd, and
talk'd:

And, as the soldiers bore dead bodies by,

He call'd them—untaught knaves, unman- 15
nerly,

To bring a slovenly unhandsome corse

Betwixt the wind and his nobility.
With many holyday and lady terms
He question'd me; among the rest demanded
My prisoners, in your majesty's behalf. 20
I then, all smarting, with my wounds being
cold,
To be so pester'd with a popinjay,
Out of my grief and my impatience,
Answer'd neglectingly, I know not what;
He should, or he should not;—for he made me 25
mad,
To see him shine so brisk, and smell so sweet,
And talk so like a waiting gentlewoman,
Of guns, and drums, and wounds (God save
the mark!)

And telling me, the sovereign'st thing on earth
Was parmaceti, for an inward bruise; 30
And that it was great pity, so it was,
That villainous saltpetre should be digg'd
Out of the bowels of the harmless earth,
Which many a good tall fellow had destroy'd
So cowardly; and, but for these vile guns, 35
He would himself have been a soldier.
This bald disjointed chat of his, my lord,
I answer'd indirectly, as I said;
And, I beseech you, let not his report
Come current for an accusation, 40
Betwixt my love and your high majesty.

(From "Henry IV." Part II.)

poun'-cet

pop'-in-jay

par-ma-ce'ti

Line	Line
1. liege, lord.	22. popinjay, a gaily coloured
8. perfumed, here pronounced	bird, a parrot; here the
in three syllables.	gaily dressed messenger of
10. pouncet-box, a box of per-	the king.
fumed powder.	30 parmaceti, for spermaceti.

Derivations, etc.

Line	Line
1. deny, from Latin <i>denego</i> , I	32. saltpetre, from Latin <i>sal</i> ,
deny.	salt, and Greek <i>petros</i> , a
16. corse for corpse, from Latin	stone.
<i>corpus</i> , a body.	

Oral Exercises.

1. Describe the appearance of the King's messenger.
2. Describe his talk.
3. How did Hotspur excuse his seeming disobedience?

Composition.

Write an essay on "Self-control."

57.—QUEEN ELIZABETH'S GREATNESS.

[The following lines are spoken by Cranmer at the baptism of the Princess Elizabeth. They show, not what Cranmer foresaw, but what the writer of the play of Henry VIII., looking back, thought of the reign of Queen Elizabeth.]

This royal infant (Heaven still move about
her!),

Though in her cradle, yet now promises
Upon this land a thousand thousand bless-
ings,

Which time shall bring to ripeness: She shall
be

(But few now living can behold that good-
ness) . 5

Betwixt the wind and his nobility.
With many holyday and lady terms
He question'd me; among the rest demanded
My prisoners, in your majesty's behalf. 20
I then, all smarting, with my wounds being
cold,
To be so pester'd with a popinjay,
Out of my grief and my impatience,
Answer'd neglectingly, I know not what;
He should, or he should not;—for he made me 25
mad,
To see him shine so brisk, and smell so sweet,
And talk so like a waiting gentlewoman,
Of guns, and drums, and wounds (God save
the mark!)

And telling me, the sovereign'st thing on earth
Was parmaceti, for an inward bruise; 30
And that it was great pity, so it was,
That villainous saltpetre should be digg'd
Out of the bowels of the harmless earth,
Which many a good tall fellow had destroy'd
So cowardly; and, but for these vile guns, 35
He would himself have been a soldier.
This bald disjointed chat of his, my lord,
I answer'd indirectly, as I said;
And, I beseech you, let not his report
Come current for an accusation, 40
Betwixt my love and your high majesty.

(From "Henry IV." Part II.)

poun'cet

pop'in-jay

par-ma-ce'ti

- Line
1. liege, lord.
8. perfumed, here pronounced
in three syllables.
10. pouncet-box, a box of per-
fumed powder.

- Line
22. popinjay, a gaily coloured
bird, a parrot; here the
gaily dressed messenger of
the king.
30. parmaceti, for spermaceti.

Derivations, etc.

- Line
1. deny, from Latin *denego*, I
deny.
16. corse for corpse, from Latin
corpus, a body.

- Line
32. saltpetre, from Latin *sal*,
salt, and Greek *petros*, a
stone.

Oral Exercises.

1. Describe the appearance of the King's messenger.
2. Describe his talk.
3. How did Hotspur excuse his seeming disobedience?

Composition.

Write an essay on "Self-control."

57.—QUEEN ELIZABETH'S GREATNESS.

[The following lines are spoken by Cranmer at the baptism of the Princess Elizabeth. They show, not what Cranmer foresaw, but what the writer of the play of Henry VIII., looking back, thought of the reign of Queen Elizabeth.]

This royal infant (Heaven still move about
her!),
Though in her cradle, yet now promises
Upon this land a thousand thousand bless-
ings,
Which time shall bring to ripeness: She shall
be
(But few now living can behold that good-
ness)

A pattern to all princes living with her,
And all that shall succeed: Sheba was never
More covetous of wisdom and fair virtue,
Than this pure soul shall be: all princely
graces,
That mould up such a mighty piece as this is, 10
With all the virtues that attend the good,
Shall still be doubled on her: truth shall
nurse her,
Holy and heavenly thoughts still counsel her:
She shall be loved and fear'd: Her own shall
bless her:
Her foes shake like a field of beaten corn, 15
And hang their heads with sorrow: Good
grows with her:
In her days, every man shall eat in safety
Under his own vine, what he plants; and sing
The merry songs of peace to all his neigh-
bours:
God shall be truly known; and those about 20
her,
From her shall read the perfect ways of
honour,
And by those claim their greatness, not by
blood.
Nor shall this peace sleep with her: But as
when
The bird of wonder dies, the maiden phoenix,
Her ashes new create another heir, 25
As great in admiration as herself:
So shall she leave her blessedness to one, .

(When heaven shall call her from this cloud
of darkness)
Who, from the sacred ashes of her honour,
Shall star-like rise, as great in fame as she 30
was,
And so stand fix'd: Peace, plenty, love, truth,
terror,
That were the servants to this chosen infant,
Shall then be his, and like a vine grow to
him;
Wherever the bright sun of heaven shall
shine,
His honour, and the greatness of his name 35
Shall be, and make new nations: He shall
flourish,
And, like a mountain cedar, reach his
branches
To all the plains about him.—Our children's
children
Shall see this, and bless Heaven.

(From "Henry VIII.")

cov'e-tous	phœn'ix	ad-mi-ra'tion
Line	Line	
6. princes, used of queens as well as of kings.		instead of by the privilege of birth.
7. Sheba, the Queen of Sheba, whose admiration of wisdom led her to visit Solomon.	24. phœnix, a fabulous bird which, when it grew old after five hundred years of life, burned itself in spices. From its ashes arose another phœnix.	
10. mighty piece, great person- age.	26. admiration, wonder.	
22. and by those claim their greatness, not by blood, and take rank from the goodness she teaches them,	27. one, James I., whom the writer of the passage de- sired to flatter.	

Derivations, etc.

Line		Line	
6.	princes, from Latin <i>princeps</i> , first, <i>capio</i> , I take; <i>princeps</i> , chief (those who take the first place)	8.	covetous, eager.

Oral Exercises.

1. Describe Queen Elizabeth's virtues, as given by S
2. What does Shakespeare say of James I.?

58.—THE MORNING HYMN OF
AND EVE.

These are Thy glorious works, Parent
good,

Almighty! Thine this universal frame,
Thus wondrous fair: Thyself, how wond
then,

Unspeakable! who sitt'st above these heav
To us invisible, or dimly seen

In these, thy lowest works: yet these declar
Thy goodness beyond thought, and pow
divine.

Speak, ye who best can tell, ye sons of light,
Angels: for ye behold Him, and with songs
And choral symphonies, day without night,
Circle His throne rejoicing; ye in heaven,
On earth join all ye creatures to extol
Him first, Him last, Him midst, and without
end.

Fairest of stars, last in the train of night,
If better thou belong not to the dawn,

pure pledge of day, that crown'st the smiling
morn

With thy bright circlet, praise him in thy
sphere,

While day arises, that sweet hour of prime.

Thou sun, of this great world both eye and
soul,

Acknowledge Him thy greater; sound His 20

eternal course, both when thou
st

ten high noon hast gain'd, and when
all'st.

meet'st the orient sun, now

ars, fix'd in their orb that

vandering fires, that move 25
t without song, resound
out of darkness call'd up

the eldest birth
it in quaternion run
iform: and mix 30
igs: let your ceaseless

Derivations, etc.

Line

6. princes, from Latin *primus*,
first, *capio*, I take; *princeps*,
chief (those who take the
first place)

Line

8. covetous, from Latin *cupidus*,
eager.

Oral Exercises.

1. Describe Queen Elizabeth's virtues, as given by Shakespeare.
2. What does Shakespeare say of James I.?

58.—THE MORNING HYMN OF ADAM
AND EVE.

These are Thy glorious works, Parent of
good,

Almighty! Thine this universal frame,

Thus wondrous fair: Thyself, how wondrous
then,

Unspeakable! who sitt'st above these heavens
To us invisible, or dimly seen

5

In these, thy lowest works: yet these declare
Thy goodness beyond thought, and power
divine.

Speak, ye who best can tell, ye sons of light,

Angels: for ye behold Him, and with songs

And choral symphonies, day without night,

10

Circle His throne rejoicing; ye in heaven,

On earth join all ye creatures to extol

Him first, Him last, Him midst, and without
end.

Fairest of stars, last in the train of night,

If better thou belong not to the dawn,

15

Sure pledge of day, that crown'st the smiling
morn

With thy bright circlet, praise him in thy
sphere,

While day arises, that sweet hour of prime.

Thou sun, of this great world both eye and
soul,

Acknowledge Him thy greater; sound His 20
praise

In thy eternal course, both when thou
climb'st

And when high noon hast gain'd, and when
thou fall'st.

Moon, that now meet'st the orient sun, now
fly'st,

With the fix'd stars, fix'd in their orb that
flies;

And ye five other wandering fires, that move 25
In mystic dance not without song, resound
His praise, who out of darkness call'd up
light.

Air, and ye elements, the eldest birth

Of nature's womb, that in quaternion run

Perpetual circle, multiform; and mix 30

And nourish all things; let your ceaseless
change

Vary to our great Maker still new praise.

Ye mists and exhalations, that now rise

From hill or steaming lake, dusky or gray,

Till the sun paint your fleecy skirts with gold, 35

In honour to the world's great Author rise;

Whether to deck with clouds the uncolour'd
 sky,
 Or wet the thirsty earth with falling showers,
 Rising or falling, still advance his praise.
 His praise, ye winds that from four quarters 40
 blow,
 Breathe soft or loud; and wave your tops, ye
 pines,
 With every plant, in sign of worship wave.
 Fountains, and ye that warble as ye flow,
 Melodious murmurs, warbling tune His
 praise.
 Join voices, all ye living souls: ye birds 45
 That, singing, up to heaven-gate ascend,
 Bear on your wings and in your notes His
 praise.
 Ye that in waters glide, and ye that walk
 The earth, and stately tread, or lowly creep;
 Witness if I be silent, morn or even, 50
 To hill or valley, fountain or fresh shade,
 Made vocal by my song, and taught His
 praise.
 Hail, universal Lord! be bounteous still
 To give us only good; and if the night
 Have gather'd aught of evil, or conceal'd,
 Disperse it, as now light dispels the dark.

(From "Paradise Lost.")

u-ni-ver'sal
 in-vis-ib-le
 sym'phon-ies

my'stic
 qua-ter-ni-on
 per-pet'u-al

mul'ti-form
 ex-hal-a'tions
 boun'teous

Line

1. These, the earth and sky.
 10. choral symphonies, music in chorus.
 11. ye in heaven. Object to *join*.
 12. ye creatures. Nominative of address, or subject to *join* (imper. mood).
 14. fairest of stars, the morning star.
 15. better, adverb modifying *belong*.
 18. prime, the early morning.
 23. Moon, that now meet'st the orient sun, now fly'st. The moon sometimes sets before the sun rises, and sometimes is still shining at dawn.
 24. fix'd in their orb that flies. The so-called fixed stars seem to move from east to west in a

Line

- great circle ("their orb that flies") without ever changing their places with respect to one another.
 25. five other wandering fires. The planets (literally wanderers), which seem to change their position among the fixed stars. The ancients counted only Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, and Saturn among the planets.
 28. elements, fire, air, earth, and water, out of which it was supposed that all things were made.
 29. quaternion, union of four.
 30. run perpetual circle, continually changing from one thing to another.

Derivations, etc.

Line

12. Creature, from *creo* (*creatum*), I create. Creature originally meant the act of creating.
 23. orient, from Lat. *orior*, I rise (of the sun). As the sun rises in the east, *orient* and *oriental* have come to mean *eastern*. *Orient* has here its original mean-

Line

- ing of *rising*, not its later force.
 31. nourish, from Lat. *nutrio*, I feed, through French *nourrir*, to nourish.
 36. author, from Lat. *augeo* (*auctum*), I increase; *auctor*, one who increases.
 53. bounteous, from Lat. *bonus*, good.

Oral Exercise.

Give, in your own words, the substance of the "Morning Hymn."

Composition.

Write an essay on "The Beauty of Common Things."

59.—TWO OF MILTON'S SONNETS.

I. ON HIS BEING ARRIVED AT THE AGE OF TWENTY-THREE.

How soon hath Time, the subtle thief of youth,
Stolen on his wing my three-and-twentieth
year!

My hasting days fly on with full career,
But my late spring no bud or blossom sheweth.
Perhaps my semblance might deceive the truth,
That I to manhood am arrived so near;
And inward ripeness doth much less appear,
That some more timely-happy spirits endueth.

Yet be it less or more, or soon or slow,
It shall be still in strictest measure even
To that same lot, however mean or high,
Towards which Time leads me, and the will of
Heaven:

All is, if I have grace to use it so,
As ever in my great Task-master's eye.

II. ON HIS BLINDNESS.

When I consider how my light is spent
Ere half my days, in this dark world and wide,
And that one talent which is death to hide,
Lodged with me useless, though my soul more
bent

To serve therewith my Maker, and present
My true account, lest He, returning chide;
"Doth God exact day-labour, light denied?"

I fondly ask: but patience, to prevent
 That murmur, soon replies, "God doth not
 need
 Either man's work, or His own gifts; who best
 Bear His mild yoke, they serve Him best; His
 state
 Is kingly: thousands at His bidding speed,
 And post o'er land and ocean without rest;
 They also serve who only stand and wait."

1. subtle, sly.

„ my late spring no bud or
 blossom sheweth. Milton
 feels that he has not done
 much work.

2. that one talent, referring to
 the parable.

„ fondly, foolishly.

Derivations, etc.

2. talent, from Greek *talanton*,
 a weight of gold or silver.
 „ fondly, here in its original
 meaning of foolishly.

2. murmur, formed from the
 sound. Name other words
 which imitate sounds.

Oral Exercises.

1. What does Milton say in the first sonnet as to the work of his life?
2. Explain "They also serve who only stand and wait."

Composition.

Write out the substance of the sonnets in your own words.

NOTES ON NINETEENTH CENTURY AUTHORS.

Charles Reade, *playwriter and novelist* (born 1814 in Oxfordshire,—died 1884 in London), is more famous for his novels than for his plays. In several of the former he attempted to rouse public opinion against abuses, and in "It is Never too Late to Mend" (from which Lessons 1 and 2, "How the Gold was Found," are taken) he showed how prisoners might be, and sometimes were, barbarously treated by the officials of prisons. Other works of his are "The Cloister and the Hearth" (from which Lesson 19, "The Duke of Burgundy's Feast at Rotterdam," is taken), a story of the Middle Ages, "Peg Woffington," "Christie Johnstone," and "Hard Cash."

Robert Louis Stevenson, *novelist, essayist, and poet* (born 1850 in Edinburgh,—died 1894 in Samoa), was the son and grandson of noted engineers, and was himself originally intended for the same profession. He gave up this intention, and was called to the Scottish Bar, but his delicate health never permitted him to practise. The greater part of his life was spent in a vain search for health. He diligently used his intervals of strength in writing; and so successful was he that there are few authors superior to him in clearness and grace of style, and in power of depicting character and of constructing plots. His travels extended to France, Italy, America, and Samoa, and the scenes of his stories are equally varied. Among his novels, the most famous are "Treasure Island," a pirate story, "The Strange Case of Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde," "Kidnapped" and its sequel "Catriona," "The Master of Ballantrae"; the most noted of his volumes of essays and miscellaneous prose writings are "An Inland Voyage," describing a canal voyage through Belgium and France, "Travels with a Donkey in the Cevennes," "Virginibus Puerisque," "Familiar Studies

of Men and Books," "Memories and Portraits," and "A Footnote to History," in which he describes the troubles in Samoa; while the best known of his poetical works is "A Child's Garden of Verses."

Lesson 3, "A Scot's First Impressions of England," is extracted from "The Foreigner at Home," one of the essays in "Memories and Portraits"; and Lessons 15 and 16. "The Escape on the Moor" is from "Kidnapped."

Bret Harte, *writer of poems, sketches, tales, and novels* (born 1839 at Albany, New York), deals chiefly with life in the Western States of America. He has had a varied career as miner, teacher, soldier, civil servant, professor, editor, and consul. His short tales and sketches of Western life were eagerly welcomed, both in America and Britain, because of their freshness and unconventionality. His longer novels have not been quite so successful. Among his best known works are "The Luck of Roaring Camp," "M'liss," "The Iliad of Sandy Bar" (short stories), "Gabriel Conroy," "In the Carquinez Woods," "A First Family of Tasajara" (novels); and "The Heathen Chinese" ("Plain Language from Truthful James"), "Her Letter," etc. (poems). "A Greyport Legend," given as Lesson 4, is an example of his less unconventional style.

Mrs Craik (*Dinah Maria Muloch*), *novelist* (born 1826 at Stoke-on-Trent,—died 1887 in Kent), is best known as "the author of 'John Halifax, Gentleman'" (from which Lesson 5, "The Bread Riot," is taken). She wrote many novels, dealing chiefly with the joys and sorrows of everyday life and everyday people. Besides "John Halifax, Gentleman," her most noted books are "The Ogilvies," "Olive," "Mistress and Maid," "My Mother and I."

Sir Walter Scott, *novelist and poet* (born 1771 in Edinburgh,—died 1832 at Abbotsford), was the son of a Scottish lawyer, and was himself called to the Scottish Bar. He attained the position of Sheriff of Selkirkshire, but his lifework was literary, not legal. Beginning as a translator of German poems, he soon published original poems, and "The Lay of the Last Minstrel" and "The Lady of the Lake," besides minor poems, gave him a great name in the world. When the appearance of Byron deprived him of his leading place as a poet, he resumed a former purpose and published "Waverley, or 'Tis Sixty Years Since," a story of the Jacobite rebellion of 1745. This was the first of a long series of historical novels, known from it as the Waverley Novels, by which he captivated the people of his day, and continues to delight those who follow. His pecuniary profits from

these tales were great, and he sought to found a county family, buying Abbotsford on the Tweed. Unfortunately this ambition led him to become a partner in the firm which published his novels, and its failure in 1826 ruined him. He set himself to pay off the immense debt of £100,000 with which he found himself saddled, and the proceeds of the new novels, new editions, and histories which he published finally discharged the debt, though not till after Scott himself had died in 1832, worn out by his immense efforts.

Besides the poems already named, Scott wrote "Marmion," "The Vision of Don Roderick," "Rokeby," "The Bridal of Triermain," "The Lord of the Isles," and many shorter pieces. The Waverley Novels may be divided into four principal classes:—(1) those which deal chiefly with Scottish history and character, among which may be named "Waverley," "Guy Mannering," "Old Mortality," "The Heart of Midlothian," "The Antiquary," "Redgauntlet," "St. Ronan's Well"; (2) those of which the scene is laid in England, as "Ivanhoe," "Woodstock," "Peveril of the Peak"; (3) romances of mediæval Europe, as "Quentin Durward" and "Anne of Geierstein"; and (4) Eastern romances, as "The Talisman" and "Count Robert of Paris." His most important historical and biographical works are "The Life of Dryden" and "The Life of Napoleon." He translated and edited very many works.

Lessons 8 and 9, "The Battle of Flodden," are taken from "Marmion." Lesson 18, "The Death of de Bouno," is part of the principal scene in "The Lord of the Isles." Lessons 45 and 46, "The False Alarm," Lesson 35, "The Battle of Inverlochy," and Lessons 54 and 55, "Queen Mary's Escape," are extracted from "The Antiquary," "The Legend of Montrose," and "The Abbot" respectively.

James J. Morier (born 1780 at Smyrna,—died 1849 at Brighton) was in the British Diplomatic Service as secretary at Teheran from 1807 to 1809 and 1810 to 1815. The experience of Oriental life which he there gained led him to write travels and tales. "The Adventures of Hajji Baba of Ispahan," from which Lesson 12, "The Turcoman Robbers and their Prisoners," is taken, is the only one of his works which still lives.

Henry Wadsworth Longfellow, poet (born 1807 at Portland, Maine,—died 1882 at Cambridge, Massachusetts), was Professor of Modern Languages at Bowdoin, Maine, and afterwards at Harvard, Massachusetts. He wrote many poems, some of which are "Tales of a Wayside Inn," including "The Saga of King Olaf" (from which the verses

Among his works are "Pauline," "Paracelsus," "Sordello," "Pippa Passes," and many other dramas, "Dramatic Idylls," "Dramatis Personæ," "The Ring and the Book," "Ferishtah's Fancies."

The two short poems "Home Thoughts from Abroad" and "Home Thoughts from the Sea," which are given as Lesson 32, are examples of Browning's less obscure style.

Lord Macaulay (*Thomas Babington Macaulay*), *historian, essayist, and poet* (born 1800 in Leicestershire,—died 1859 in London), was educated at private schools and at Cambridge. He was called to the Bar, held several legal appointments, and took a prominent place as a politician, but it is as a poet, essayist, and historian that he is best known. He held strong Whig and Liberal views, and his political opinions appear in all his works. His poems are few in number, "The Lays of Ancient Rome" being the most important. Of his essays, contributed originally to the *Edinburgh Review*, some of the most important are on Milton, Clive, Warren Hastings, Pitt, and Addison. His greatest work is 'The History of England from the Accession of James II.," originally intended to come down to the author's own time, but, at his death, only carried to the close of the reign of William III. It is marked by flowing style, vivid narrative, and brilliant pictures of the past, but some critics assert that the author has been led by his strong political feeling into grave though unintentional unfairness. Lessons 33 and 34, "The Trial of Alice Lisle," are a fair example of Macaulay's prose style; and Lesson 36, "The Armada," shows the stateliness of his poetry.

Charles Lever, *novelist* (born 1806 in Dublin,—died 1872 at Trieste), was educated at private schools and Dublin University. He studied medicine, but his real work lay in literature. Most of his novels deal with Irish life and character, but a few, such as "Tom Burke of Ours" (from which Lessons 39 and 40, "The Battle of Jena," are taken), have their scene on the Continent. His most noted novels are "The Confessions of Harry Lorrequer," "Charles O'Malley," "Jack Hinton," "Tom Burke of Ours," "The O'Donoghue," "The Knight of Gwynne," "Con Cregan," "Roland Cashel." His style is flowing and his pictures vivid, but he is by no means accurate in his historical novels.

Lord Byron, *poet* (born 1788 in London,—died 1824 at Missolonghi, Greece), was educated at Aberdeen, Nottingham, Dulwich, Harrow, and Trinity College, Cambridge. He made his first appearance as a poet by publishing "Hours of Idleness," a volume of occasional

pieces, in 1807, and the hostile reception given to this by the *Edinburgh Review* stimulated him into full activity. His "English Bards and Scotch Reviewers," published in 1809, showed his power, and from that year onwards he was recognised as a great poet. His quarrel with his wife, who was supported by public opinion, led to his leaving England, which he never revisited. When the Greeks rose against the Turks he threw himself enthusiastically into the struggle, and it was in the Greek service that he contracted the illness which led to his death.

His principal works are, besides those already named, "Childe Harold's Pilgrimage" (from which Lesson 41, "The Eve of Waterloo," is taken), "The Giaour," "The Bride of Abydos," "The Siege of Corinth," and "Don Juan."

Since his death, Byron has fallen in popular favour in this country, but many Continental critics regard him as our greatest poet.

Thomas De Quincey (see p. 210).

Thomas Carlyle, *historian and essayist* (born 1795 at Ecclefechan, Dumfriesshire,—died 1881 in London), was educated for the ministry of the Church of Scotland, and afterwards studied for the Scottish Bar, but finally betook himself to literature. After many years of obscurity he attracted public attention by "Sartor Resartus" (from which Lesson 53, "Workers," is taken), a treatise, under the form of a biography, on the development of character by struggle, trial, and work. In other works, historic satires, lectures, and biographies, he continued to proclaim the excellences of silent work, steadfastness in trouble, sincerity, and earnestness of purpose. His remarkable style has been often imitated, but never with success.

Besides "Sartor," the list of his works includes "The Life of Schiller," "The French Revolution," "On Heroes and Hero Worship," "Life and Letters of Oliver Cromwell," "Latter Day Pamphlets," and the "History of Frederick the Great."

quoted in Lessons 13 and 14, "King Olaf's Failure," are taken), "Evangeline," "The Spanish Student," "The Golden Legend," "The Courtship of Miles Standish," "Hiawatha" (an Indian legend). Among the best known of his shorter works are "The Belfry of Bruges" (given in Lesson 22), "The Building of the Ship," "A Psalm of Life," "The Beleaguered City" (Lesson 47), and "The Wreck of the Hesperus." Longfellow's prose works ("Outre-mer," "Hyperion," "Kavanagh," etc.) are unimportant.

Charles Dickens, *novelist* (born 1812 at Portsea,—died 1870 at Gadshill, Kent); had a hard boyhood, and was successively packer in a blacking warehouse, solicitor's clerk, and parliamentary reporter. When little over twenty years of age he began to write articles in various newspapers, and these were reissued as "Sketches by Boz." In 1836 he was asked to write sketches to illustrate a series of humorous pictures, and these sketches developed into "The Pickwick Papers," his first, and perhaps his most popular novel. "Pickwick" was followed by a long series of novels which soon gave Dickens rank as the first novelist of the day, Thackeray alone being comparable to him in public estimation,—and as judged by the sale of his books, even Thackeray lagged far behind.

Among the works of Dickens may be mentioned, besides "Pickwick" (from which Lesson 23, "Mr. Winkle goes Rook-shooting," is extracted), "Oliver Twist," "Nicholas Nickleby," "The Old Curiosity Shop," "Martin Chuzzlewit," "Dombey and Son," "David Copperfield," and "Bleak House." Many of these were written "with a purpose,"—that is, they were intended to arouse public interest in some abuse that required remedying.

Charles Lamb, *essayist* (born 1775 in London,—died 1834 at Edmon-ton), was educated at Christ's Hospital, and became a clerk at first in the South Sea House, and afterwards in the India House. He contributed to various newspapers, and gained reputation by two series of "Essays of Elia," light, graceful, quaintly humorous disquisitions on many various subjects. With his sister Mary, he wrote a series of "Tales from Shakespeare."

Lessons 26 and 27, "The Discovery of Roast Pig," are taken from one of the "Essays of Elia."

Mrs. Browning (*Elizabeth Barrett*), *poetess* (born 1806 in County Durham,—died 1861 at Florence), early took high rank. In 1846 she married Robert Browning, and thereafter spent most of her life in Italy, for which both she and her husband had a great affection. Her best

known works are "Aurora Leigh," "The Cry of the Children," "The Rhyme of the Duchess May," "A Drama of Exile," and "Sonnets from the Portuguese," besides many shorter poems. "Lessons from the Gorse" (Lesson 28) shows her strong sense of the beauty of simple things, and her readiness to draw spiritual lessons from Nature.

William Wordsworth (born 1770 at Cockermouth,—died 1850 at Rydal Mount, Westmorland) was the greatest of the so-called "*Lake School*" of poets. He was educated at Hawkshead, between Windermere and Coniston Water, and at Cambridge. After a tour in France at the beginning of the Revolution, and a short residence in Somersetshire, he settled at Grasmere in Westmorland, where he began the long series of works which made him famous. Everyday life, everyday persons, familiar scenes, and the beauties of nature were his chief themes; and these he treated, in his best works, with a simplicity, clearness, and yet profundity of thought, and with a beauty of expression which few if any poets have equalled.

His fame rests, perhaps, more on his shorter than on his longer poems, but among the latter may be named "The Excursion," "The Prelude," "The White Doe of Rylstone." Some of the shorter poems are "The Daffodils" (given in this book as Lesson 30), "We are Seven," "Peter Bell," "Ode on Intimations of Immortality in Early Childhood."

Robert Southey (born 1774 at Bristol,—died 1843 at Keswick), one of the "*Lake School*" poets, occupies a much lower place than Wordsworth, with whom he was closely associated all his life. He was a voluminous writer of both prose and poetry, and was Poet Laureate from 1813 to 1843. Among the most noted poems are "Thalaba the Destroyer," "The Curse of Kehama," "A Vision of Judgment," and "Madoc." Of his prose works, "The Life of Nelson" (from which Lesson 31, "The Death of Nelson," is taken), "The Life of John Wesley," and "The History of Brazil" may be mentioned. Lesson 55, "The Holly Tree," is a fair example of the style of his shorter poems.

Robert Browning, poet (born 1812 in London,—died 1889 at Venice), was educated at Peckham, and at University College, London. He published "Pauline" anonymously in 1833, but it was many years before his work began to attract notice. In time, however, he was recognised as one of the deepest and most philosophical of our poets, but the not infrequent obscurity of his language and the intentional roughness of the metre he used long delayed public appreciation.

SHAKESPEARE.

William Shakespeare was born in 1564 at Stratford-on-Avon, a small Warwickshire town, and was educated at the Grammar School there. Very little is known of his early life. According to tradition he was rather wild and got into trouble through deer-stealing, while some passages in his plays seem to favour the notion that he was at variance with Sir Thomas Lucy, a local magnate. At the age of nineteen he married Anne Hathaway, and soon afterwards he went up to seek a livelihood in London.

He formed a connection with the theatres, and became an actor; but although a steady worker, as an actor he never rose above mediocrity. He began to write plays, however, as well as to act them, and for more than twenty years was almost constantly at work in this way.

During this time he became a partner in various companies of players, and gradually saved money, so that he was able to assist his father, who had fallen into difficulties; and to purchase houses and lands at Stratford. About 1608 he retired to his native town, and in 1616 he died.

Deep insight into human nature, intense and wide sympathy with all manner of men, immense power of portraying character, supreme command over the English language, gave Shakespeare his leading place among the great authors, not merely of England, but of the whole world.

His plays are often divided into Tragedies, Comedies, and Histories, and, although redundant, since the histories are all either tragedies or comedies, the division is convenient.

Of his Tragedies the greatest are a group of five: *Hamlet*, *King Lear*, *Macbeth*, *Othello*, *Romeo and Juliet*, which picture the great passions of life.

Among the Comedies are some that differ little from tragedies in their intense and terrible interest, and of these *Measure for Measure* may be taken as an example. Others again are light and graceful, as *Twelfth Night* and *As You Like It*, while yet others are broadly farcical, as *The Comedy of Errors*.

The Histories gave Shakespeare's view of the story of England from the reign of John to that of Henry VIII., and display his intense patriotism.

Besides the plays some poems—*Venus and Adonis*, *Tarquin and Lucrece*, and others—are included in the list of Shakespeare's works, and they are all powerful, but it is on his dramas that his fame rests.

MILTON.

John Milton, "the last of the Elizabethans," as he has been called, was born in 1608 in London, and educated at St Paul's School and Christ's College, Cambridge. His father was a sincere and earnest Puritan, and Milton himself warmly adopted Puritan principles. Refusing to take orders, since he considered that he would forfeit his liberty of conscience by doing so, he spent many years in preparing for the work he had chosen—that of a poet. When the quarrels between King and Parliament became acute he threw himself into the controversy, and wrote many treatises on the popular side; and during the Commonwealth he was Latin (or foreign) secretary to the Government. At the Restoration he was arrested but soon afterwards released, and the remainder of his life was spent in poverty and obscurity, made all the harder to bear by the blindness which had fallen on him.

Yet it was in this darkness and poverty that he wrote his great epic *Paradise Lost*, the stateliest poem in the English language. It brought him in his lifetime neither fame nor money, and he died in 1674, having apparently failed in all his purposes.

Milton's early works include *Comus*, *Lycidas*, *L'Allegro*, and *Il Penseroso*, short poems, but almost sufficient in themselves to have justified his claim to the name of great poet. His prose works, many of them in Latin, written when he was actively engaged in the great constitutional controversy, are of comparatively little interest as literature. One of them, however, *Areopagitica*, a *Speech for the Liberty of Unlicensed Printing*, addressed to the Long Parliament, is a noble piece of English prose.

Paradise Lost, the work of Milton's later years, describes the creation, temptation, and fall of man, and is an exposition of the faith of the vanquished Puritans, as well as of their resolution and courage, even when all things had seemingly gone against them. *Paradise Regained* is a much less powerful poem.

Samson Agonistes, describing the last remorse and death of captive Samson, is to some extent the expression of Milton's own feelings after the triumph of the Cavaliers.

Milton also wrote sonnets in English, Italian, and Latin.

LITERARY

CLASSICS

The books of this series present, in a form suitable for school use, some literary classics which it is desirable that every pupil should have an acquaintance with, but which in their entirety are too long for school reading.

SOME GLANCES AT PEPYS'S
DIARY.

104 Pages.

BOSWELL'S LIFE OF JOHNSON

96 Pages.

THE ADVENTURES OF THE
RED CROSS KNIGHT.

108 Pages.

Each: Limp Cloth, 1s.

ils of the Bill while presenting
or consideration.

o my mind, it appeared to be such
small Bill, to streamline an
organisation which was getting flab-
that it would be understood by
learned and respected Members
his House and so, I did not bore
n with further details on the sub-

Nevertheless, I would like to
ove certain apprehensions in the
ds of the hon. Members. Some-
y was talking of decentralisation
us centralisation; somebody was
ng that it is a bureaucratic step.
me explain the thinking behind it.

the Steel Authority of India, which
known as Holding Company as Mr.
i said, is an ownership company.

Steel Authority of India owns
the steel plants. Now, here is a
e where the owner is not an opera-

When Shri Kumaramanglam
ught in this idea, the idea was to
own it and then to operate it. He
fulfilled the first part but could
fulfil the second part which I am
bound to fulfil for efficiency and
better management.

that is being centralised? Nothing
being centralised. The Durgapur
l Plant remains. It will have a
rol board instead of a company.
aro Steel Plant remains. It will
e a control board instead of a
ted company. Similarly, Rourkela
l Plant, Bhilai Steel Plant or any
er plant that this country will
d, will remain. They are owned
SAIL and they will continue to be
ed by SAIL and they will be
ating units of the SAIL. SAIL
d will be re-structured by a
rman and the Directors-Incharge
all the Steel Plants and no out-
will be there. Formerly, there
to be persons from trade, busi-
etc. The Janata Government has
ed that it will be manned, run
managed only by experts and
bureaucrats and no bureaucrat will be
olved in the actual operation of
Steel Authority of India

The Ministry is accountable to
Parliament. It will have to bring
policies for examination in the two
Houses of Parliament and to imple-
ment them. The House has the right
of scrutiny of the Ministry's func-
tioning, of all the public undertakings
under the Ministry by two bodies of
Parliament, Public Accounts Commit-
tee and the Public Undertakings Com-
mittee, two most powerful bodies of
Parliament. Somebody says that the
Ministry is taking control. If the
Ministry were to take control, then
there is no need for SAIL; there is no
need for anybody else. All that
would be the Department of the State
which is so in other countries. But
we have wisely chosen in this country
over the years to decentralise not
only the SAIL but in the Ministry of
Industry there are several plants like
HMT, BEHL, Jessops, which are sepa-
rate companies with Chairman and
Managing Director and technical and
financial boards. But part of it need-
ed to be decentralised. The Steel
Authority of India, when it was
founded, at that time the design and
development company called MECON,
was only for designing and develop-
ment of our steel plants and its ancil-
lary units. Now, we had hardly much
work except expansion of the Bhilai
and Bokaro Steel Plants, major part
of which was already completed.
MECON in the mean time, developed
into an international organisation, has
hardly any work. Therefore, this
House surely would like me to ensure
that MECON does not die with it.

Surely, they would expect the
Ministry to ensure that the MECON's
activities, with all the expertise it has
gathered, with a galaxy of technicians
and engineers that it has gathered,
sprawl out into the world. The steel
world is the biggest thing outside
India, not inside India. We produce
hardly 10 million tonnes whereas
Japan has the capacity of 145 million
tonnes; even South Korea is going to
produce more than us and Iran is
going to produce more than us. So,
we are pushing as indeed the will of